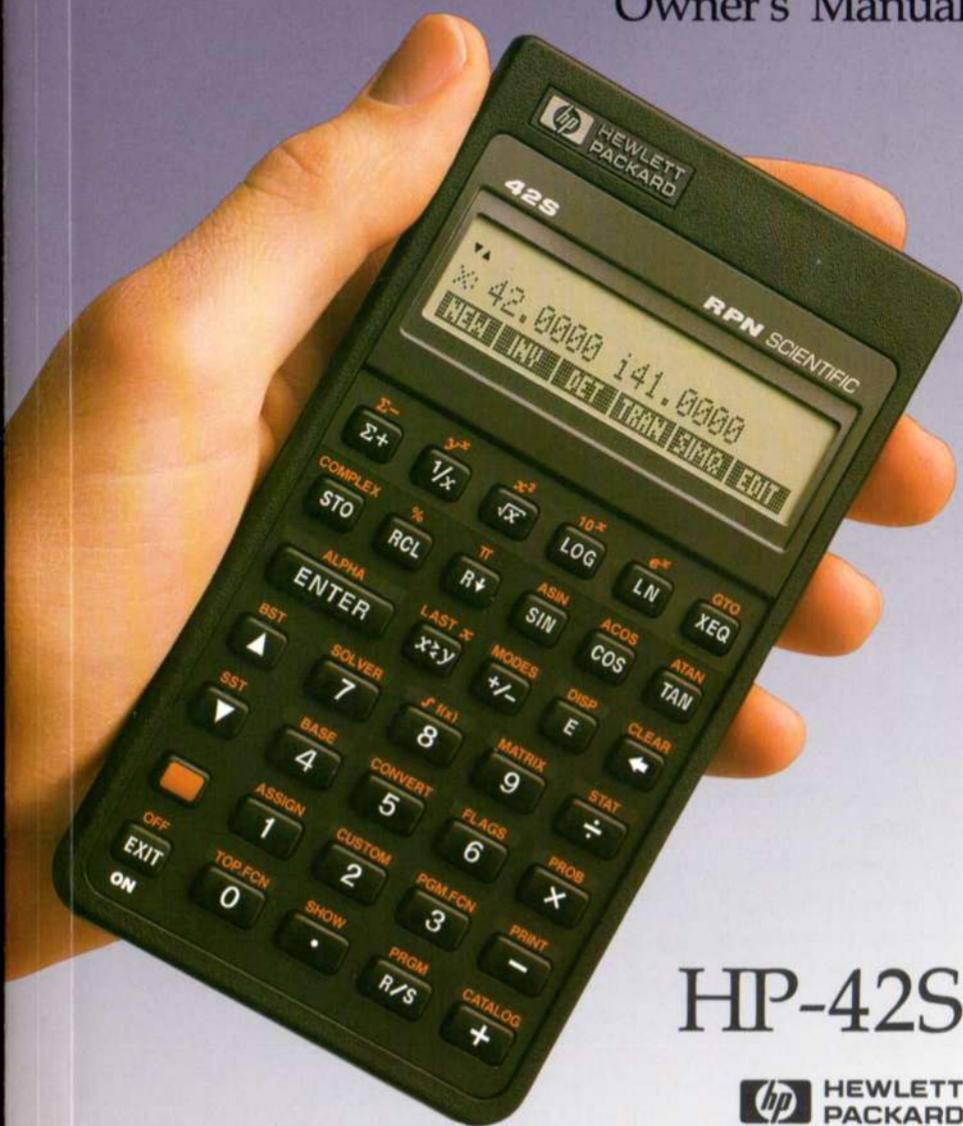


HEWLETT-PACKARD

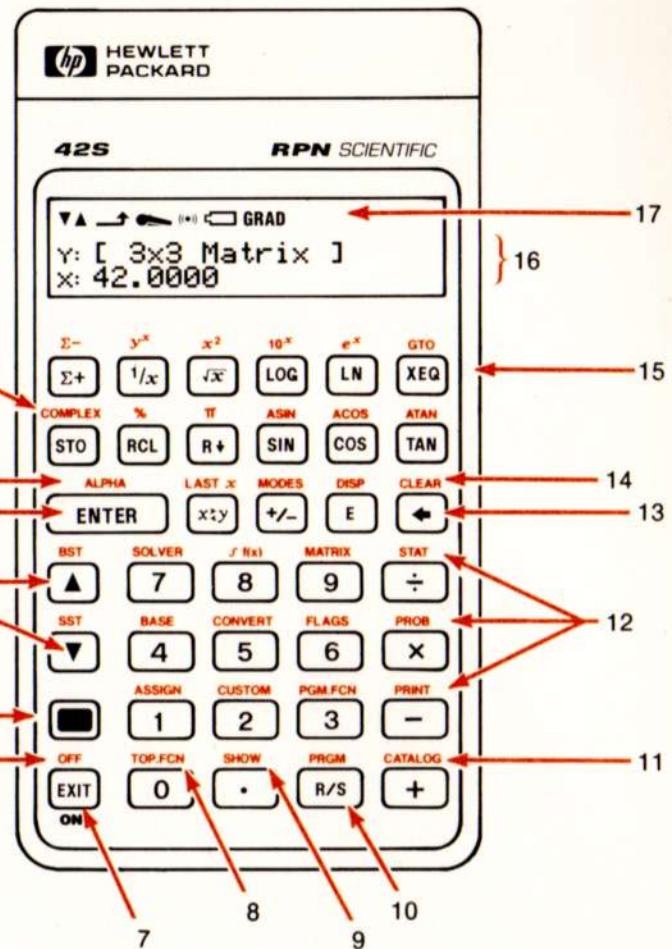
RPN Scientific Calculator

Owner's Manual



HP-42S

 HEWLETT
PACKARD



1. Converts to/from complex numbers.
2. Menu for typing characters.
3. Enters a number.
4. Moves up/down through a menu or program.
5. Shift key.
6. Calculator OFF.
7. Exits current menu or mode.
8. Top-row functions.
9. Shows full precision of number.
10. Run/stop program.
11. Catalogs of functions, programs, and variables.
12. Menu-selection keys.
13. Backspace.
14. Functions for clearing.
15. Menu keys (top row).
16. Two-line display.
17. Display annunciators.

HP-42S Owner's Manual

Welcome to the world of the HP-42S! This Owner's Manual provides the information you need to learn how to use your HP-42S calculator effectively. It includes a brief history of calculators, a quick start guide, and detailed descriptions of all the calculator's features and capabilities. You'll learn how to enter data, perform calculations, and solve equations. You'll also discover how to use the calculator's built-in functions, including trigonometric, logarithmic, and exponential functions. The manual also covers how to use the calculator's memory, including how to store and recall data, and how to use the calculator's programming features to create custom programs. Whether you're a beginner or an experienced user, this manual will help you get the most out of your HP-42S calculator.



The contents of this manual are printed on recycled paper.

hp HEWLETT
PACKARD

HP Part No. 00042-90001
Printed in U.S.A.

Edition 7

Notice

For warranty and regulatory information for this calculator, see pages 262 and 265.

This manual and any keystroke programs contained herein are provided "as is" and are subject to change without notice. Hewlett-Packard Company makes no warranty of any kind with regard to this material or the keystroke programs contained herein, including, but not limited to, the implied warranties of merchantability and fitness for a particular purpose. Hewlett-Packard Co. shall not be liable for errors or for incidental or consequential damages in connection with the furnishing, performance, or use of this manual or the keystroke programs contained herein.

© Hewlett-Packard Co. 1988. All rights reserved. Reproduction, adaptation, or translation of this manual, including any programs, is prohibited without prior written permission of Hewlett-Packard Company, except as allowed under the copyright laws. Hewlett-Packard Company grants you the right to use any program contained in this manual in this Hewlett-Packard calculator.

The programs that control your calculator are copyrighted and all rights are reserved. Reproduction, adaptation, or translation of those programs without prior written permission of Hewlett-Packard Co. is also prohibited.

Corvallis Division
1000 N.E. Circle Blvd.
Corvallis, OR 97330, U.S.A.

Printing History

Edition 1	June 1988
Edition 2	October 1988
Edition 3	March 1989
Edition 4	March 1990
Edition 5	August 1991
Edition 6	September 1991
Edition 7	January 1992

Welcome to the HP-42S

Your HP-42S reflects the superior quality and attention to detail in engineering and manufacturing that have distinguished Hewlett-Packard products for nearly 50 years. Hewlett-Packard stands behind this calculator: we offer accessories, worldwide service, and expertise to support its use (see inside the back cover).

Hewlett-Packard Quality

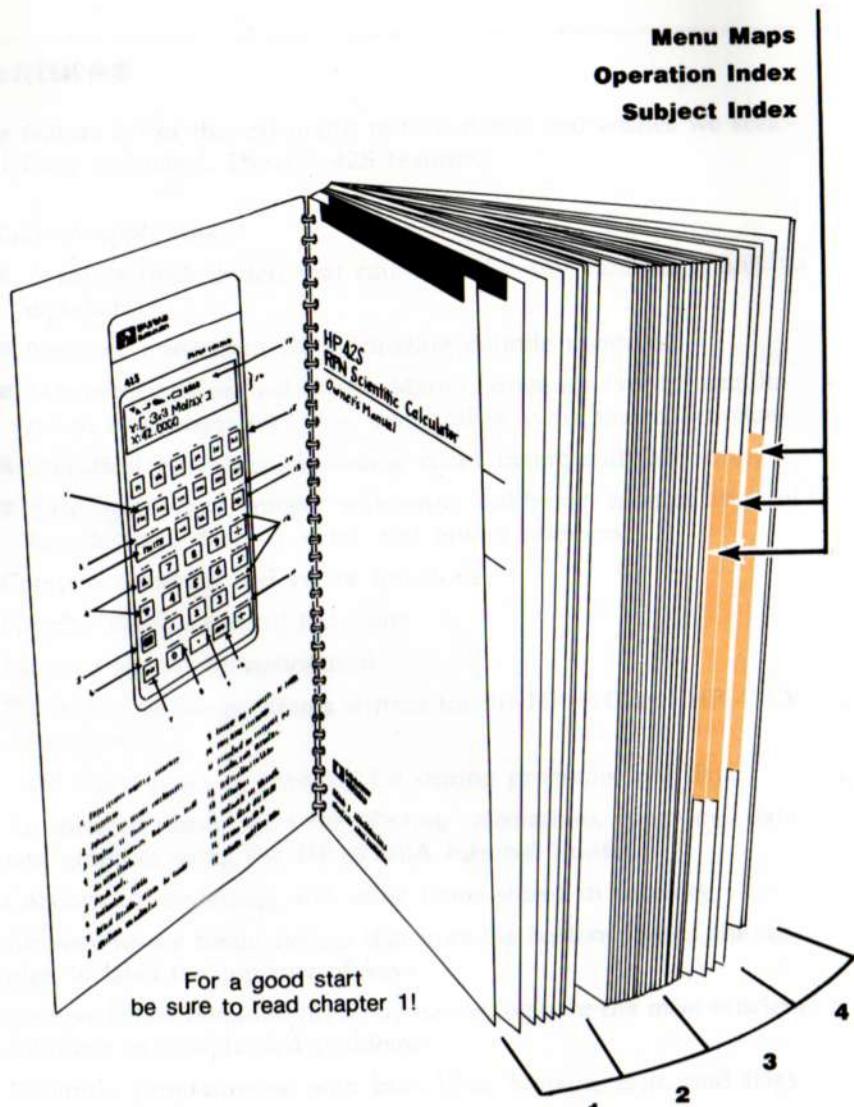
Our calculators are made to excel, to last, and to be easy to use.

- This calculator is designed to withstand the usual drops, vibrations, pollutants (smog, ozone), temperature extremes, and humidity variations that it may encounter in normal, everyday worklife.
- The calculator and its manual have been designed and tested for ease of use. We added many examples to highlight the varied uses of this calculator.
- Advanced materials and permanent, molded key lettering provide a long keyboard life and a positive feel to the keyboard.
- CMOS (low-power) electronics and the liquid-crystal display allow the HP-42S to retain data while it is off and let the batteries last a long time.
- The microprocessor has been optimized for fast and reliable computations. The calculator uses 15 digits internally, then rounds to 12 digits for precise results.
- Extensive research has created a design that has minimized the adverse effects of static electricity, a potential cause of malfunctions and data loss in calculators.

Features

The feature set of this calculator reflects needs and wishes we solicited from customers. The HP-42S features:

- Built-in applications:
 - A solver (root finder) that can solve for any variable in an equation.
 - Numeric integration for calculating definite integrals.
 - Matrix operations, including a Matrix Editor, a solver for simultaneous linear equations, and many other useful matrix functions.
 - Statistical operations, including curve fitting and forecasting.
 - Base conversions, integer arithmetic, and binary manipulation of hexadecimal, decimal, octal, and binary numbers.
- Complex numbers and vector functions.
- Graphic display control functions.
- Menus that can be customized.
- The ability to run programs written for the HP-41C and HP-41CV calculators.
- Over 7,200 bytes of memory for storing programs and data.
- An infrared printer port for printing calculations, programs, data, and graphics using the HP 82240A Infrared Printer.
- Catalogs for reviewing and using items stored in memory.
- An easy-to-use menu system that uses the bottom line of the display to label the top row of keys.
- Reverse Polish Notation (*RPN*) operating logic for the most efficient solutions to complicated problems.
- Keystroke programming with branching, looping, tests, and flags.
- A two-line, 22-character, alphanumeric display with adjustable contrast.



- Part 1: Basic Operation**
- Part 2: Programming**
- Part 3: Built-In Applications**
- Part 4: Appendixes and Reference**

Menu Maps
Operation Index
Subject Index

Contents

Part 1: Basic Operation

1	18	Getting Started
	18	Important Preliminaries
	18	Power On and Off; Continuous Memory
	19	Regular and Shifted Keystrokes
	19	Annunciators
	20	Adjusting the Display Contrast
	20	Using Menus
	21	Displaying a Menu
	23	Multirow Menus (\blacktriangledown)
	23	Submenus and [EXIT]
	25	Clearing the Calculator
	25	Using the \square Key
	26	The CLEAR Menu
	26	Clearing All Programs and Data
	27	Errors and Messages
	27	Keying In Numbers
	27	Making Numbers Negative
	27	Exponents of Ten
	28	Understanding Digit Entry
	28	Simple Arithmetic
	29	One-Number Functions
	30	Two-Number Functions
	31	Chain Calculations
	33	Exercises: Calculations for Practice
	33	Range of Numbers
	34	Changing the Display Format
	34	Number of Decimal Places
	36	Selecting the Radix Mark (Comma vs. Period)
	36	Showing All 12 Digits

37	Keying In Alphanumeric Data
37	Using the ALPHA Menu
38	The Alpha Display and the Alpha Register
40	Catalogs
41	An Introduction to Flags

42	The Automatic Memory Stack
42	What the Stack Is
43	The Stack and the Display
44	Reviewing the Stack (RI)
44	Exchanging x and y (xy)
45	Arithmetic—How the Stack Does It
46	How ENTER Works
48	How CLX Works
48	The LAST X Register
49	Using LASTx To Correct Mistakes
50	Using LASTx To Reuse Numbers
52	Chain Calculations
52	Order of Calculation
53	Exercises: More RPN Calculations
55	Variables and Storage Registers
55	Storing and Recalling Data
56	Variables
57	Storage Registers
58	Storing and Recalling Stack Registers
60	Data Types
61	Arithmetic With STO and RCL
62	Managing Variables
62	Clearing Variables
62	Using the Variable Catalogs
63	Printing Variables
63	Managing Storage Registers
64	Changing the Number of Storage Registers (SIZE)
64	Clearing Storage Registers
64	Printing Storage Registers
65	Storing and Recalling Alpha Data
65	Storing Alpha Data (ASTO)
66	Recalling Alpha Data (ARCL)

67	Executing Functions
67	Using the Function Catalog
68	Using the CUSTOM Menu
68	Making CUSTOM Menu Key Assignments
70	Clearing CUSTOM Menu Key Assignments
70	Using the XEQ Key
71	Specifying Parameters
72	Numeric Parameters
73	Alpha Parameters
73	Specifying Stack Registers as Parameters
74	Indirect Addressing—Parameters Stored Elsewhere
75	Exercises: Specifying Parameters
76	Function Preview and NULL

77	Numeric Functions
77	General Mathematical Functions
79	Percentages
79	Simple Percent
79	Percent Change
80	Trigonometry
80	Setting Trigonometric Modes
80	Trigonometric Functions
82	The Conversion Functions
83	Converting Between Degrees and Radians
83	Using the Hours-Minutes-Seconds Format
84	Coordinate Conversions (Polar, Rectangular)
86	Altering Parts of Numbers
87	Probability
87	The Probability Functions
88	Generating a Random Number
89	Hyperbolic Functions

90	Complex Numbers
90	Entering Complex Numbers
92	How Complex Numbers Are Displayed
93	Arithmetic With Complex Numbers
94	Vector Operations Using Complex Numbers
98	Storing Complex Numbers
98	Complex-Number Variables
98	Making the Storage Registers Complex

100	Printing
101	Common Printing Operations
102	Printing Modes
103	Flags That Affect Printing
103	Printing Speed and Delay Time
104	Low Calculator Batteries
104	Calculator Functions That Print
104	Printing Graphics in the Display
104	Printing Programs
105	Character Sets

Part 2: Programming

108	Simple Programming
108	An Introduction to Keystroke Programming
111	Program-Entry Mode
111	The Program Pointer
111	Moving the Program Pointer
111	Inserting Program Lines
112	Deleting Program Lines
112	Executing Programs
112	Normal Execution
113	Running a Program With R/S
114	Stopping a Program
114	Testing and Debugging a Program
115	Error Stops
115	The Basic Parts of a Program
115	Program Lines and Program Memory
116	Program Labels
117	The Body of a Program
117	Constants
118	Program ENDS
119	Clearing Programs

121	Program Input and Output
121	Using the INPUT Function
125	Using a Variable Menu
128	Displaying Labeled Results (VIEW)
129	Displaying Messages (AVIEW and PROMPT)
130	Entering Alpha Strings Into Programs

131	Printing During Program Execution
131	Using Print Functions in Programs
132	Printing With VIEW and AVIEW
132	Working With Alpha Data
132	Moving Data Into and Out of the Alpha Register
134	Searching the Alpha Register
135	Manipulating Alpha Strings
135	Graphics
135	Turning On a Pixel in the Display
136	Drawing Lines in the Display
136	Building a Graphics Image Using the Alpha Register

141	Programming Techniques
141	Branching
141	Branching to a Label (GTO)
143	Calling Subroutines (XEQ and RTN)
145	The Programmable Menu
148	Local Label Searches
149	Global Label Searches
149	Conditional Functions
150	Flag Tests
151	Comparisons
151	Testing the Data Type
151	Bit Test
152	Looping
152	Looping Using Conditional Functions
153	Loop-Control Functions
154	Controlling the CUSTOM Menu
154	Example Programs
154	The Display Plot Program ("DPLOT")
158	The Printer Plot Program ("PLOT")

166	Using HP-41 Programs
166	Important Differences
167	HP-41 User Keyboard
168	Statistical Operations
169	Printer Interface
169	The Alpha Register
169	Range of Numbers
169	Data Errors and the Real-Result Flag
170	The Display
170	Keystrokes

171	No Packing
171	Function Names
175	Enhancing HP-41 Programs

Part 3: Built-In Applications

12	178 The Solver 178 Using the Solver 179 Step 1: Writing a Program for the Solver 182 Step 2: Selecting a Program To Solve 182 Step 3: Storing the Known Variables 183 Step 4: Solving for the Unknown 183 Choosing Initial Guesses 186 How the Solver Works 187 Halting and Restarting the Solver 187 Interpreting the Results 189 Using the Solver in a Program 190 More Solver Examples 190 The Equation of Motion for Free-Fall 192 The Time Value of Money Equation	214 Complex Matrices 214 Creating Complex Matrices 215 Converting a Complex Matrix to Real 215 Filling a Complex Matrix 217 Redimensioning a Matrix 218 Matrix Arithmetic 219 Matrix Functions 220 Vector Operations 220 Simultaneous Linear Equations 223 Matrix Utility Functions (Indexing) 223 Controlling the Index Pointers 225 Storing and Recalling Matrix Elements 225 Programmable Matrix Editor Functions 225 Swapping Rows 226 Submatrices 227 Special Matrices in the HP-42S 227 The Storage Registers (<i>REGS</i>) 227 Matrices for Simultaneous Equations
13	196 Numerical Integration 197 Using Integration 197 Step 1: Writing a Program for Integration 199 Step 2: Selecting a Program To Integrate 200 Step 3: Storing the Constants 200 Step 4: Selecting a Variable of Integration 200 Step 5: Setting the Limits and Calculating the Integral 202 Accuracy of Integration 203 Using Integration in a Program	15 228 Statistics 228 Entering Statistical Data 231 Statistical Functions 231 Sums 231 Mean 231 Weighted Mean 232 Standard Deviation 232 Correcting Mistakes 233 The Summation Registers 237 Limitations on Data Values 237 Using Statistical Data Stored in a Matrix 239 Curve Fitting and Forecasting 244 How Curve Fitting Works
14	205 Matrix Operations 205 Matrices in the HP-42S 206 Creating and Filling a Matrix in the X-Register 208 Creating and Filling a Named Matrix 211 The Matrix Editor 212 How Elements Get Stored 213 Matrices That Automatically Grow 213 Restoring the Old Value 214 Inserting and Deleting Rows	16 245 Base Operations 245 Base Conversions 247 The Representation of Numbers 248 Negative Numbers 248 Showing Numbers 248 Range of Numbers 249 Integer Arithmetic 249 The Logic Functions 251 Programming Information

Part 4: Appendixes and Reference

- A**
- 254 Assistance, Batteries, and Service**
254 Obtaining Help in Operating the Calculator
254 Answers to Common Questions
257 Power and Batteries
257 Low-Power Indications
258 Installing Batteries
260 Environmental Limits
260 Determining if the Calculator Requires Service
261 Confirming Calculator Operation—the Self-Test
262 Limited One-Year Warranty
262 What Is Covered
262 What Is Not Covered
263 Consumer Transactions in the United Kingdom
263 If the Calculator Requires Service
263 Obtaining Service
264 Service Charge
264 Shipping Instructions
265 Warranty on Service
265 Service Agreements
265 Regulatory Information
- B**
- 267 Managing Calculator Memory**
267 Resetting the Calculator
267 Clearing All Memory
268 Reclaiming Memory
268 How the HP-42S Conserves Memory
269 What Happens When Data Is Copied
270 Writing Memory-Efficient Programs
271 Memory Organization
- C**
- 273 Flags**
273 User Flags (00 Through 10 and 81 Through 99)
273 Control Flags (11 Through 35)
276 System Flags (36 Through 80)
276 Flags That Represent Options
278 Flags That Represent Conditions
280 Summary of HP-42S Flags

- D** 283 **Messages**
- E** 288 **Character Table**
- 292 **Menu Maps**
- 310 **Operation Index**
- 336 **Subject Index**

Part 1

Basic Operation

-
- | | | |
|-------------|------------|---|
| Page | 18 | 1: Getting Started |
| | 42 | 2: The Automatic Memory Stack |
| | 55 | 3: Variables and Storage Registers |
| | 67 | 4: Executing Functions |
| | 77 | 5: Numeric Functions |
| | 90 | 6: Complex Numbers |
| | 100 | 7: Printing |

Getting Started

This chapter provides you with a detailed orientation to the HP-42S. You'll learn how to:

- Use menus to access calculator functions.
- Clear information from calculator memory.
- Key in numbers and do arithmetic.
- Change the way numbers are displayed.
- Key in alphanumeric data with the ALPHA menu.
- Use catalogs to review the contents of calculator memory.

Important Preliminaries

Power On and Off; Continuous Memory

To turn on the HP-42S, press **EXIT**. Notice that **ON** is printed below the key.

To turn the calculator off, press **OFF**. That is, press and release the shift key, **■**, then press **EXIT** (which has **OFF** printed above it). Since the calculator has *Continuous Memory*, turning it off does not affect any information you've stored.

After about 10 minutes of inactivity, the calculator turns itself off to conserve battery power. When you turn the calculator on again, you can resume working right where you left off.

Under most conditions, calculator batteries last well over a year. If you see the low-battery symbol (**■**) in the display, replace the batteries as soon as possible. Refer to appendix A for details and instructions.

Regular and Shifted Keystrokes

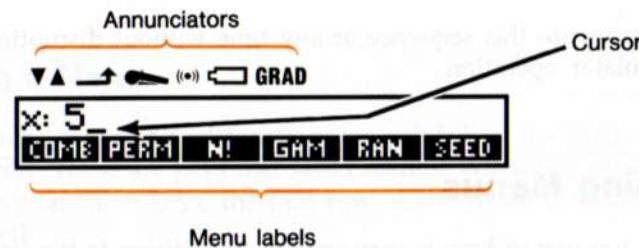
Each key has two functions: one printed on its face, and a *shifted* function printed in color above the key. For example, **OFF** is the shifted function of the **EXIT** key (written as **■ OFF**). To execute a shifted function, press **■**, then press the key.

Pressing **■** turns on the shift annunciator (\blacktriangleleft), which remains on until you press the next key. To cancel \blacktriangleleft , just press **■** again.

The \blacktriangleleft remains active for as long as you hold down the **■** key. To execute several consecutive shifted functions, hold **■** down and press the appropriate keys.

Annunciators

The calculator uses seven *annunciators* at the top of the display to indicate various conditions.



Annunciator	Meaning
▼	The ▼ and ▲ keys are active for moving through a multirow menu (page 23).
→	Shift (■) is active.
🖨️	The calculator is sending information to the printer (page 100).
(●)	The calculator is busy executing a function or a program.
🔋	Battery power is low.
RAD	Radians angular mode is set (page 80).
GRAD	Grads angular mode is set (page 80).

Adjusting the Display Contrast

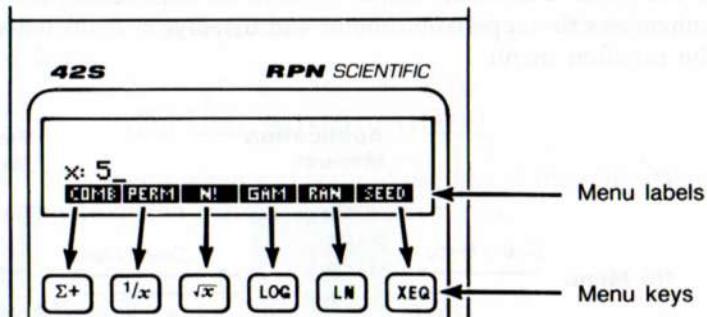
To adjust the contrast of the display for various viewing angles and lighting conditions:

1. Press and hold [EXIT].
2. Press [+] to darken the display, [-] to lighten the display.
3. Release [EXIT].

You can use this sequence at any time without disrupting any other calculator operation.

Using Menus

The top row of keys is very special. In addition to the standard functions printed on the keyboard, these six keys can be redefined by *menu labels* in the display. To execute a function in a menu, press the key directly below the corresponding menu label.



Example: Using a Menu. Use the N! (*factorial*) function in the menu shown above to calculate the factorial of 5 (that is, 5!). Key in 5 and display the PROB (*probability*) menu.

5 [■] PROB

x: 5.0000
COMB PERM N! GAM RAN SEED

To execute the N! function, press the key directly below the menu label (√x). This is written as:

N!

y: 0.0000
x: 120.0000

Thus, $5! = 120$.

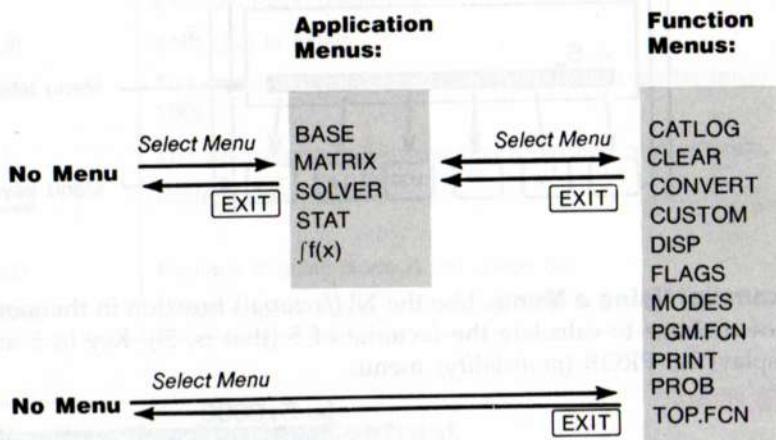
Displaying a Menu

Notice that some of the shifted functions are printed on the keyboard in shaded boxes. These are keys that select menus. When you select a menu with one of these keys, the first row of the menu is immediately displayed.

Application Menus. There are five menu-driven *applications* in the HP-42S. (See the illustration below.) Application menus have top priority among all of the menus. To exit from an application, press [EXIT] or select another application.

Function Menus. The HP-42S has over 350 built-in functions. The most frequently used functions are grouped into *function menus*. In the example above, you used a function menu (■ PROB) to execute the N! function.

If you select a function menu while in an application, the calculator remembers the application menu and displays it again when you exit the function menu.



Disabling Automatic Exit. Function menus automatically exit as soon as you execute one of the functions in the menu. If you want to use a function menu repeatedly, you can disable automatic exiting by selecting the menu twice. For example, if you press **PROB**, **PROB**, the PROB menu stays in the display until you press **EXIT** or select another menu.

Menu Labels Marked With ■. There are a variety of modes and settings in the HP-42S. If a menu label contains the ■ character, then that mode or setting is currently selected. For example, display the MODES menu:

MODES	x: 120.0000
	DEG ■ RAD GRAD RECT ■ POLAR

The menu in this display shows that Degrees (■ DEG) and Rectangular (■ RECT) modes are selected. (These modes are explained in chapter 5.)

The ALPHA Menu. The ALPHA menu (■ ALPHA) is neither an application nor a function menu. It is an extension of the keyboard that allows you to type characters (alphabetic and others) that don't appear on the keyboard. Instructions for using the ALPHA menu are on page 37.

The TOP.FCN Menu. Pressing ■ TOP.FCN (top-row functions) displays a menu containing the functions (shifted and unshifted) on the six top-row keys:

Σ-	y ^x	x ²	10 ^x	e ^x	GTO
Σ+	1/x	√x	LOG	LN	XEQ

Use the TOP.FCN menu when you want to use one of these functions without exiting from the current application menu.

Multirow Menus (▼)

Menus with more than six labels are divided into *rows*. If a menu has more than one row, the ▼ annunciator appears, indicating that the ▼ and ▲ keys can be used to display the other rows.

For example, the CLEAR menu has two rows. Press ■ CLEAR to see the first row:

CLΣ	CLP	CLV	CLST	CLA	CLX
-----	-----	-----	------	-----	-----

Press ▼ to display the second row:

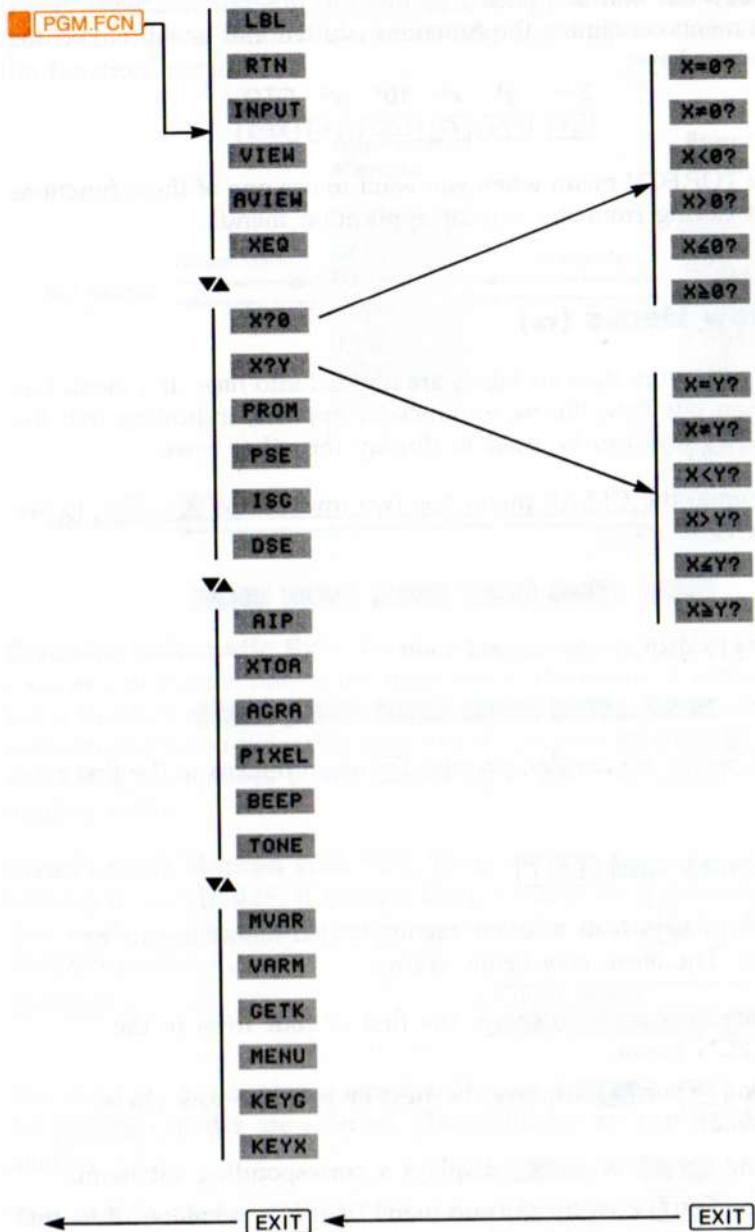
CLRG	DEL	CLKY	CLLC0	CLMN	CLALL
------	-----	------	-------	------	-------

Because menus are *circular*, pressing ▼ again returns to the first row.

Submenus and EXIT

Some menu keys lead to other menus, called *nested* menus or *submenus*. The *menu map* below shows:

- Pressing ■ PGM.FCN displays the first of four rows in the PGM.FCN menu.
- Pressing ▼ or ▲ displays the next or previous row (▼ is displayed).
- Pressing ■ X?θ or ■ X?Y displays a corresponding submenu.
- Pressing ■ EXIT exits the current menu. If it is a submenu, then the previous menu is displayed.



Example: Displaying the X?0 Submenu. Display the second row of the PGM.FCN menu.

PGM.FCN

x: 120.0000
LBL RTN INPUT VIEW AVIEW XEQ



x: 120.0000
X?0 X?Y PROM PSE ISC DSE

Now display the X?0 submenu.

X?0

x: 120.0000
X?0 X?Y PROM PSE ISC DSE

When you exit the submenu, the calculator displays the second row of PGM.FCN again.

EXIT

x: 120.0000
X?0 X?Y PROM PSE ISC DSE

Press EXIT again and the PGM.FCN menu disappears.

EXIT

y: 0.0000
x: 120.0000

Clearing the Calculator

There are several ways to clear information from the calculator. You can clear characters, numbers, variables, programs, or even all of calculator memory with a single operation.

Using the Key

The key is a backspace and delete key. The calculator's response when you press depends on what is in the display.

- If a cursor is present (_), backspaces and deletes the preceding digit or character.
- If a message is displayed, clears the message.
- If a number (or other data) is displayed *without a cursor*, clears the entire number to zero.
- If program lines are displayed, deletes the current program line. (Program-entry mode is explained in chapter 8.)

The CLEAR Menu

The CLEAR menu contains 12 functions for clearing information from the calculator.

CLEAR	
CLZ	Clear statistics.
CLP	Clear program.
CLV	Clear variable.
CLST	Clear stack.
CLR	Clear Alpha register.
CLX	Clear X-register to zero.
CLRG	Clear storage registers.
DEL	Delete program lines.
CLKY	Clear keys.
CLLCD	Clear liquid crystal display.
CLMN	Clear MENU.
CLALL	Clear all programs and data.

Clearing All Programs and Data

The CLALL (*clear all*) function clears *all* programs and data from calculator memory but leaves display formats and other settings intact.

1. Press **CLEAR** ▶ **CLALL**.
2. Press **YES** to confirm; or any other key to cancel.

A special key sequence can be used to clear all of memory (including modes and flags). Refer to "Clearing All Memory" in appendix B.

Errors and Messages

Whenever you attempt an operation that the calculator cannot complete, it displays a message that specifies the problem. If you're not sure what you've done wrong, refer to appendix D, "Messages."

You do not have to clear the message to continue working—the message disappears as soon as you press a key. If you want to clear the message without altering anything else, press **◀**.

Keying In Numbers

If you make a mistake while keying in a number, press **◀** to backspace and delete the last digit, or press **CLEAR** **CLX** (*clear X-register*) to clear the entire number.

Making Numbers Negative

The **+/-** (*change sign*) key changes the sign of a number.

- To key in a negative number, type the number, then press **+/-**.
- To change the sign of a number *already* displayed, just press **+/-**.

Exponents of Ten

Numbers with exponents of ten are shown in the display with an **E** to separate the nonexponent part of the number from the exponent. A number too large or too small for the current display format is automatically displayed in exponential form. For example, the number 123,000,000,000,000 (1.23×10^{14}) is displayed as $1.2300E14$.

To key in a number with an exponent:

1. Key in the nonexponent part of the number. If this part is negative, press **+/-**.
2. Press **[E]**. Notice that the cursor follows the **E**.

3. Key in the exponent. If it is negative, press [+/-] . The largest possible exponent you can key in is ± 499 (with one digit to the left of the decimal point).

For example, to key in Planck's constant, 6.6262×10^{-34} , you would press: 6.6262 [E] 34 [+/-] .

For a power of ten without a multiplier, such as 10^{34} , just press $\text{[E]} 34$. The calculator automatically inserts a "1" before the exponent: $1\text{E}34_-$.

Other Exponent Functions. To specify an exponent of ten *while entering a number*, use [E] . To calculate an exponent of ten (the base 10 antilogarithm), use $\text{[10}^{\text{x}}]$. To calculate the result of *any* number raised to a power, use $\text{[x}^{\text{y}}]$. Numeric functions (including $\text{[10}^{\text{x}}]$ and $\text{[x}^{\text{y}}]$) are covered in chapter 5.

Understanding Digit Entry

As you key in a number, the *cursor* ($\underline{ }$) appears in the display. The cursor shows you where the next digit will go and indicates that the number is not completed yet. That is, when a cursor is present, *digit entry is not terminated*.

- If digit entry is *not* terminated, then [Delete] backspaces to erase the last digit.
- If digit entry is *terminated* (no cursor), then [Delete] clears the entire number (which is equivalent to $\text{[CLEAR]} \text{ [CLX]}$).

Simple Arithmetic

All numeric functions follow one simple rule: *when you press a function key, the calculator immediately executes the function*. Therefore, all operands must be present *before* you execute a function.

Arithmetic can be broken down into two types of functions: one-number functions (such as square root) and two-number functions (such as addition).



Note

Many of the displays shown in this manual assume that you've worked the preceding example. Unless indicated otherwise, previous results and the contents of your calculator are irrelevant to the current example.

One-Number Functions

One-number functions operate on the value in the display ($y: \text{value}$). To use a one-number function:

1. Key in the number. (If the number is already displayed, you can skip this step.)
2. Press the function key. (The function may be on a normal or shifted key or in a menu.)

For example, to calculate $\sqrt{32}$, key in 32 ...

32

y: 120.0000
x: 32_

... then press the function key:

[1/x]

y: 120.0000
x: 0.0313

The result (to four decimal places) is 0.0313.

Now calculate $\sqrt{1.5129}$.

1.5129 $\text{[\sqrt{x}]}$

y: 0.0313
x: 1.2300

If a number is already in the display, you don't have to key it in again. Calculate the square of 1.23.

$\text{[x}^{\text{2}}]$

y: 0.0313
x: 1.5129

Remember, you can make a number negative at any time with the [+/-] key. Notice that only the number in the bottom line changes.

+/-

Y: 0.0313
X: -1.5129

One-number functions also include the logarithmic functions, the trigonometric functions, the parts-of-numbers functions, and the hyperbolic functions; they are covered in chapter 5.

Two-Number Functions

To use a two-number function (such as $+$, $-$, \times , or \div):

1. Key in the first number.
2. Press **ENTER** to separate the first number from the second.
3. Key in the second number. (Do not press **ENTER** again.)
4. Press the function key.

Remember, both numbers must be present before executing the function.

For example:

To Calculate:	Press:	Result:
$12 + 3$	12 ENTER 3 +	15.0000
$12 - 3$	12 ENTER 3 -	9.0000
12×3	12 ENTER 3 x	36.0000
$12 \div 3$	12 ENTER 3 ÷	4.0000

The order of entry is essential for noncommutative functions (such as $-$ and \div). If the numbers have been entered in the wrong order, you can still get the correct answer without reentering the numbers. Swap the order of the numbers by pressing **[x_y]** (*x exchange y*), then perform the intended function. (Refer also to "Exchanging x and y" in chapter 2.)

Chain Calculations

The speed and simplicity of calculating with the HP-42S is apparent during *chain calculations* (calculations with more than one operation). Even during the longest of calculations, you still work with only one or two numbers at a time—the automatic memory stack stores intermediate results until you need them. (The stack is explained in chapter 2.) The process of working through a problem is the same as working it out on paper, but the calculator does the hard part.

Example: A Chain Calculation. Solve $(12 + 3) \times 7$. To work this problem on paper, you would first calculate the intermediate result of $(12 + 3)$. That is, you would start *inside* the parentheses and work outward.

$$\begin{array}{r} 15 \\ (12 + 3) \times 7 \end{array}$$

Then you would multiply the intermediate result by 7 to get the final answer.

$$15 \times 7 = 105$$

Solving the problem on the HP-42S uses the same logic. Start inside the parentheses:

12 **ENTER** 3 **+**

Y: 4.0000
X: 15.0000

This intermediate result is saved automatically—you don't need to press **ENTER**. Simply multiply it by seven.

7 **x**

Y: 4.0000
X: 105.0000

Example: Another Chain Calculation. Problems that have multiple parentheses can be solved in the same simple manner because intermediate results are automatically remembered. For example, to solve $(2 + 3) \times (4 + 5)$ on paper, you would first calculate the values inside parentheses, and then you would multiply them together.

$$\begin{array}{r} 5 \quad \times \quad 9 \\ (2 + 3) \times (4 + 5) \end{array}$$

Again, working the problem on the HP-42S involves the same logical steps:

2 [ENTER] 3 [+]

Y: 105.0000
X: 5.0000

4 [ENTER] 5 [+]

Y: 5.0000
X: 9.0000

Notice that the two intermediate results in the display are the same ones you calculated on paper. Press [x] to multiply them.

[x]

Y: 105.0000
X: 45.0000

Remember: This method of entering numbers, called Reverse Polish Notation (*RPN*), is unambiguous and therefore does not need parentheses. It has the following advantages:

- You never work with more than two numbers at a time.
- Pressing a function key immediately executes that function so there is no need for an [=] key.
- Intermediate results appear as they are calculated, so you can check each step as you go.
- Intermediate results are automatically stored. They reappear as they are needed for the calculation—the last result stored is the first to come back out.
- You can calculate in the same order as you would with pencil and paper.
- If you make a mistake during a complicated calculation, you don't have to start over. (Correcting mistakes is covered in chapter 2.)
- Calculations with other types of data (such as complex numbers and matrices) follow the same rules.
- Calculations in programs follow the same steps as when you execute them manually.

Exercises: Calculations for Practice

The following calculations exercise the methods you've learned for simple arithmetic. Work each problem in the same order as you would work it on paper. (There may be more than one way to work each problem.) Remember, use [ENTER] only for separating two numbers entered sequentially.

Calculate: $(2 + 3) \div 10$

Answer: 0.5000

A Solution: 2 [ENTER] 3 [+]
10 [+]

Calculate: $2 \div (3 + 10)$

Answer: 0.1538

A Solution: 3 [ENTER] 10 [+]
2 [x_y] [+]

Another Solution: 2 [ENTER] 3 [ENTER] 10 [+]
[+]

Calculate: $(14 + 7 + 3 - 2) \div 4$

Answer: 5.5000

A Solution: 14 [ENTER] 7 [+]
3 [+]
2 [-]
4 [+]

Calculate: $4 \div (14 + (7 \times 3) - 2)$

Answer: 0.1212

A Solution: 7 [ENTER] 3 [x]
14 [+]
2 [-]
4 [x_y] [+]

Another Solution: 4 [ENTER] 14 [ENTER] 7 [ENTER] 3 [x]
[+]
2 [-]
[+]

Range of Numbers

The HP-42S is capable of representing numbers as large as $9.9999999999 \times 10^{499}$ and as small as 1×10^{-499} . If you attempt to execute a function that returns a result larger than $9.9999999999 \times 10^{499}$, the calculator displays the *Out of Range* error message. The operation you attempted is ignored, and the message disappears when you press the next key.

If you attempt an arithmetic function that returns a number whose magnitude is smaller than 1×10^{-499} , the calculator automatically substitutes the number zero.

Changing the Display Format

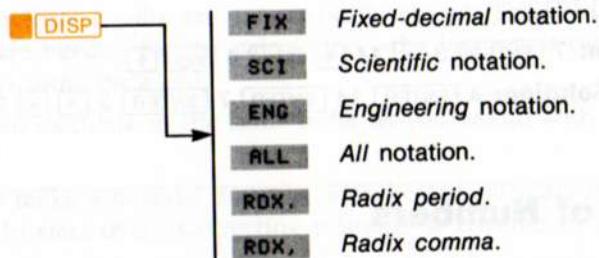
Internally, the HP-42S always saves numbers with full 12-digit accuracy plus a three-digit exponent of ten.

Even though numbers are stored with full precision, the way they're displayed depends on the current display format. There are two general ways to display numbers:

- Round the number to a specified number of digits. There are three formats that do this: FIX (fixed-decimal notation), SCI (scientific notation), and ENG (engineering notation).
- Show all of the digits in a number (except trailing zeros). This is the ALL format.

In addition to controlling how digits are displayed, you can select the character used as the decimal point—called the *radix*. The radix may be a period (default) or a comma.

Functions for changing the display format are in the DISP (display) menu:



Number of Decimal Places

The default display format is FIX 4. (The calculator displays numbers rounded to four places to the right of the decimal.)

To change the number of decimal places:

1. Press **DISP**.
2. Press: **FIX**, **SCI**, **ENG**, or **ALL**.
3. For FIX, SCI, and ENG, specify the number of digits (0 through 11):
 - Key in two digits (such as 02).
 - Or, key in a single digit followed by **ENTER** (such as 2 **ENTER**).

Example: Changing the Display Format. Key in the numbers 2.46×10^7 and 1234567.89, and then change the display format to ENG 2.

2.46 **E** 7 **ENTER** 1234567.89

y: 24,600,000.0000
x: 1,234,567.89_

DISP **ENG** 2 **ENTER**

y: 24.6E6
x: 1.23E6

Now change to the ALL display format.

DISP **ALL**

y: 24,600,000
x: 1,234,567.89

Now return to the default setting (FIX 4).

DISP **FIX** 4 **ENTER**

y: 24,600,000.0000
x: 1,234,567.8900

Fixed-Decimal Notation (FIX). In FIX notation, the calculator displays numbers rounded to the specified number of decimal places. Exponents of 10 are used only if the number is too large or too small to display using the current display format. (Example: 3.1416.)

Scientific Notation (SCI). In SCI notation, the calculator displays numbers with one digit to the left of the decimal point and the specified number of digits to the right. An exponent of 10 is always shown; even if it is zero. (Example: 6.0220E26.)

Engineering Notation (ENG). In ENG notation, the calculator displays numbers in a format similar to SCI except the exponent of 10 is always a multiple of three. This means that more than one digit may appear to the left of the decimal point. The number of digits you specify indicates how many digits to display after the first digit. (Example: 10.423E-3.)

All Notation (ALL). In ALL notation, the calculator displays numbers using full precision. That is, all significant digits to the right of the decimal point are shown. (Example: 4.17359249.)

Selecting the Radix Mark (Comma vs. Period)

To change the radix mark to a comma, press **DISP RDX,**. When the radix is a comma, periods are used to separate digits.

1.234.567,8900

To change the decimal point back to a period, press **DISP RDX.**.

1,234,567.8900

You can remove the digit separators by clearing flag 29 (page 276).

Showing All 12 Digits

When you press and hold the **SHOW** key, the calculator displays the contents of the X-register using the ALL format—that is, all significant digits are shown. When you release the key, the display returns to the current display format.

1.23456789012 **ENTER**

Y: 1.2346
X: 1.2346

SHOW (hold down)

1.23456789012

(release)

Y: 1.2346
X: 1.2346

The **SHOW** key can also be used to show the entire contents of the Alpha register (page 40), a long program line (page 111), or the first element in a matrix (page 207).

Keying In Alphanumeric Data

Alphabetic and other characters are typed into the HP-42S using the ALPHA menu, which contains all the letters in the alphabet (uppercase and lowercase) and many other characters.

One or more characters typed with the ALPHA menu form an *Alpha string*.

Using the ALPHA Menu

To type a string of characters into the Alpha register:

1. Press **ALPHA** to select the ALPHA menu.
2. Press an ALPHA menu key to select a group of letters or characters.
3. Press a menu key to type a character. To type a lowercase letter, press **ALPHA** before typing the letter.

Repeat steps 2 and 3 for each letter or character. You can also use the following keys to type Alpha characters: **%**, **π**, **E**, **+**, **×**, **-**, **[**, **]**, **0**, **1**, **2**, **3**, **4**, **5**, **6**, **7**, **8**, **9**, and **.**

Example. The keystrokes for typing the string The HP-42S. are:

ALPHA RSTUV **T** (hold down) FGH₁ H ABCDE E
(release **ALPHA**) WXYZ FGH₁ H NOPQ P - 4 2
RSTUV S **.**

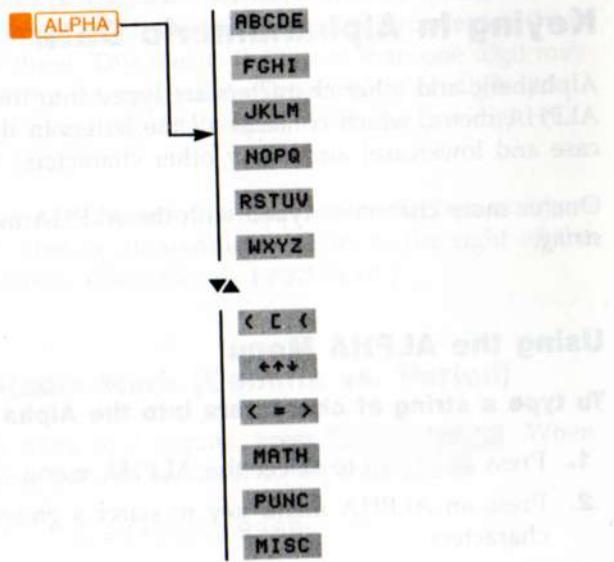
For simplicity, this manual shows these keystrokes as:

ALPHA The HP-42S.

The HP-42S.
ABCDE FGH₁ JKLM NOPQ RSTUV WXYZ

ALPHA Typing Tips:

- Any blank menu key in the ALPHA menu can be used to type a space character. A rapid sequence for typing a space is **XEQ XEQ** (that is **WXYZ** or **MISC**).
- To type several lowercase letters, hold down the shift key (**ALPHA**) while typing.



The characters in each of the submenus are shown in the menu maps beginning on page 292.

The Alpha Display and the Alpha Register

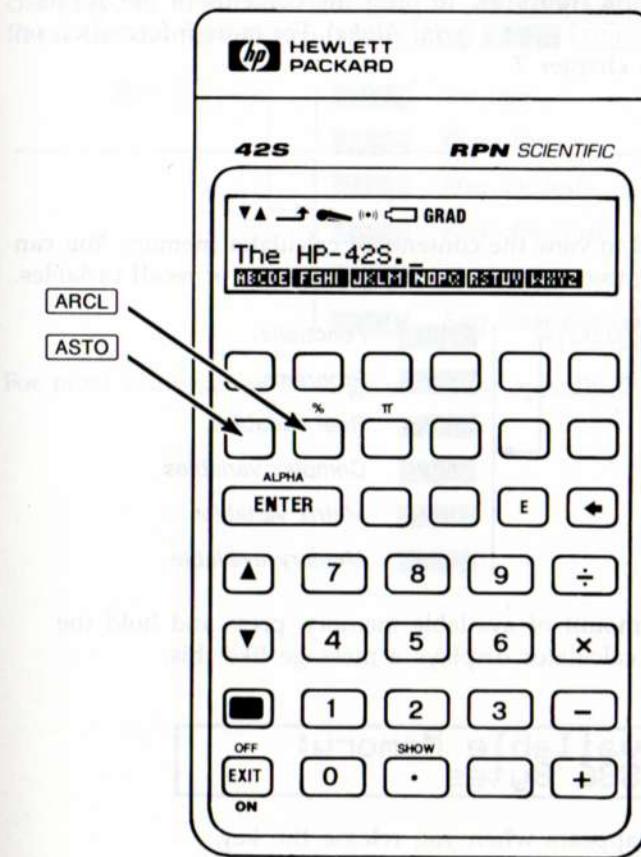
Alpha strings can be typed only when the ALPHA menu is displayed. How strings are used or where they are stored, however, depends on other circumstances. Alpha strings can be:

- Typed directly into the Alpha register.
- Used as a function parameter to specify a variable name or program label (page 73).
- Entered as program instructions (page 130).

Alpha Mode: Entering Characters Into the Alpha Register. In the previous example, the Alpha characters were entered into the *Alpha register*. When you press **ALPHA**, the calculator displays the ALPHA menu and the Alpha register—this is *Alpha mode*.

If there are characters in the Alpha register, they are displayed when you enter Alpha mode. The Alpha register is cleared when you begin typing. To append characters to the current contents of Alpha, press **ENTER** to turn the cursor on before you begin to type.

The following illustration shows the keys that are active in Alpha mode.



Capacity of the Alpha Register. The Alpha register can hold up to 44 characters. The calculator beeps when the Alpha register gets full. The beep warns you that each additional character you type will push the first (left-most) character out of the Alpha register.

If the display overflows, the ... character indicates there are some characters you can't see.

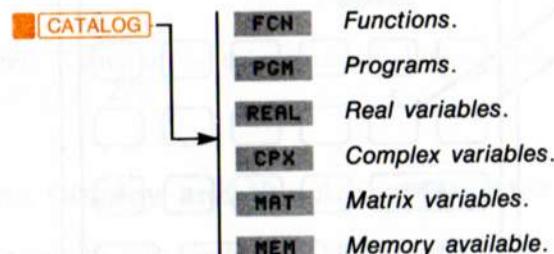
To display the entire Alpha register:

- While in Alpha mode, press and hold **SHOW**.
- While not in Alpha mode, press **PGM.FCN** **VIEW** (*Alpha view*).

Printing the Alpha Register. To print the contents of the Alpha register, press **PRINT** **PRA** (*print Alpha*). For more information on printing, refer to chapter 7.

Catalogs

Catalogs are used to view the contents of calculator memory. You can also use a catalog to execute functions or programs or recall variables.



To display the amount of available memory, press and hold the **MEM** key. The calculator displays a message like this:

**Available Memory:
6836 Bytes**

The message disappears when you release the key.

An Introduction to Flags

Throughout the rest of this manual there are references to numbered flags. A flag has two states, *set* and *clear*. If you are unfamiliar with flags, simply think of them as switches that are either on or off.

The HP-42S has 100 flags (numbered 00–99); most of them have special purposes inside the calculator. To set, clear, and test the status of flags, use the functions in the FLAGS menu:

FLAGS	
SF	<i>Set flag.</i>
CF	<i>Clear flag.</i>
FS?	<i>Flag set test.</i>
FC?	<i>Flag clear test.</i>
FS?C	<i>Flag set test and clear.</i>
FC?C	<i>Flag clear test and clear.</i>

For more information on flags, refer to appendix C.

2

The Automatic Memory Stack

This chapter explains how calculations take place in Hewlett-Packard's automatic memory stack and how it minimizes the number of keystrokes required to do complicated calculations.

More specifically, you will learn:

- What the stack is.
- How the stack automatically remembers results from previous calculations.
- What is meant by *stack lift* and *stack drop*.
- How to view and manipulate the contents of the stack.
- How to save keystrokes and correct mistakes with  **LAST_x**.

You do not need to read and understand this chapter to use the HP-42S. However, you'll find that understanding this material will greatly enhance your use of the calculator. In programs, efficient use of the stack saves memory by reducing the number of program steps needed to solve a problem.

What the Stack Is

Automatic storage of intermediate results is the reason the HP-42S easily processes complex calculations, and does so without parentheses. The key to automatic storage is the *automatic, RPN memory stack*.*

* HP's operating logic is based on a mathematical logic known as "Polish Notation," developed by the Polish logician Jan Łukasiewicz (1878–1956). While conventional algebraic notation places the operators *between* the relevant numbers or variables, Łukasiewicz's notation places them *before* the numbers or variables. For optimal efficiency of the stack, we have modified that notation to specify the operators *after* the numbers. Hence the term *Reverse Polish Notation*, or *RPN*.

The stack consists of four storage locations, called *registers*, which are "stacked" on top of each other. It is a work area for calculations. These registers—labeled X, Y, Z, and T—store and manipulate four current numbers. The "oldest" number is the one in the T-register (*top*).

T	0.0000
Z	0.0000
Y	0.0000
X	0.0000

The most "recent" number is in the X-register and is usually displayed.

You might have noticed that several functions' names include an *x* or *y*. These letters refer to the values in the X- and Y-registers. For example,  **y^x** raises the number in the Y-register to the power of the number in the X-register.

To clear all four of the stack registers to zero, press  **CLEAR**  **CLST**.



Note

Each stack register can hold any type of data (a real number, Alpha string, complex number, or matrix). Examples in this chapter use real numbers; however, the stack works the same regardless of the type of data it contains.

The Stack and the Display

Since the HP-42S has a two-line display, it is capable of displaying two numbers (*x* and *y*) or one number (*x*) and a menu.

For further information, refer to the chapter on “Using the Stack” for details about how to use the stack for solving equations and how to use it to get no “bad results” errors, such as when fractions—“fractions” or “fractions—complex” mode are turned off. There are also “stack” and “stack—complex” mode settings.

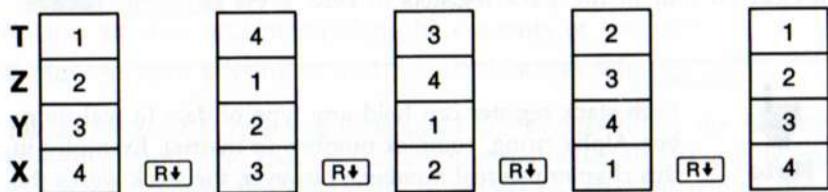
1.0000	T	1.0000
2.0000	Z	2.0000
Y: 3.0000	Y	3.0000
x: 4.0000	X	x: 4.0000

Menu

Reviewing the Stack ($\text{R}\downarrow$)

The $\text{R}\downarrow$ (roll down) key lets you review the entire contents of the stack by “rolling” the contents downward, one register at a time.

Suppose the stack is filled with 1, 2, 3, 4 (press 1 [ENTER] 2 [ENTER] 3 [ENTER] 4). Pressing $\text{R}\downarrow$ four times rolls the numbers all the way around and back to where they started:



Notice that the *contents* of the registers are shifted—the registers themselves maintain their positions.

Exchanging x and y (xy)

Another key for manipulating the contents of the stack is xy (*x exchange y*). It swaps the contents of the X- and Y-registers without affecting the rest of the stack. The xy function is generally used to swap the order of numbers for a calculation.

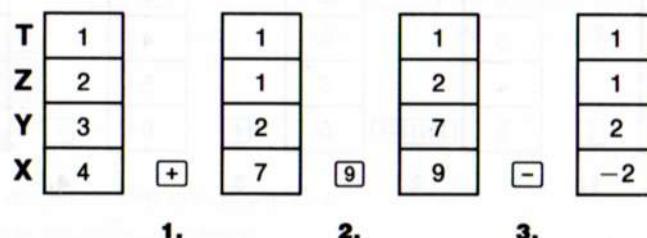
To calculate $9 \div (13 + 8)$ you might press 13 [ENTER] 8 + 9 xy +. The xy function swaps the two numbers so they are in the correct order for division.

Arithmetic—How the Stack Does It

The contents of the stack move up automatically as new numbers enter the X-register (*lifting the stack*). The contents of the stack automatically move down when a function replaces two numbers (*x* and *y*) with a single result in the X-register (*dropping the stack*).

Suppose the stack is still filled with the numbers 1, 2, 3, and 4. See how the contents of the stack lift and drop while calculating

$$3 + 4 - 9.$$



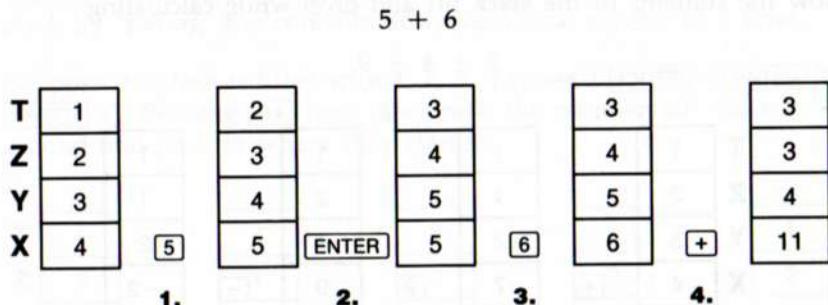
1. The stack “drops” its contents. (The top register replicates its contents.)
2. The stack “lifts” its contents. (The top contents are “lost”.)
3. The stack drops.

- Notice that when the stack lifts, numbers are pushed off the top of the stack (out of the T-register) and are lost. Therefore, the stack memory is limited to four numbers.
- Because of the automatic movement in the stack, you do not need to clear the display before starting a new calculation. “Old” results are just pushed up the stack.

- Generally, keying in a number causes the stack to lift. However, there are four functions that specifically *disable stack lift*. They are **ENTER**, **CLX** *, **$\Sigma+$** , and **$\Sigma-$** . That is, a number keyed in immediately after one of these functions *replaces* the number in the X-register rather than pushing it up.

How **ENTER** Works

In chapter 1 you learned that **ENTER** separates two numbers keyed in one after the other. In terms of the stack, how does it do this? Suppose the stack is again filled with 1, 2, 3, and 4. Now enter and add two new numbers:



- Lifts the stack.
- Lifts the stack and replicates the X-register.
- Does not lift the stack.
- Drops the stack and replicates the T-register.

ENTER copies the contents of the X-register into the Y-register and *disables stack lift* so that the second number you enter *writes over* the copy of the first number in the X-register. The effect is simply to separate two numbers entered sequentially.

* Remember, the **♦** key sometimes functions as **CLX**. Refer to "Using the **♦** Key" on page 25.

Filling the Stack With a Constant. Whenever the stack drops, the number in the T-register is duplicated in the Z-register. Therefore, you can completely fill the stack with a constant number and use that number repeatedly in calculations. Every time the stack drops, the constant is duplicated at the top of the stack.

Example: Constant, Cumulative Growth. Given a bacterial culture with a growth rate of 50% per day, how large would a population of 100 be at the end of 3 days?

Replicates T-register

T	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5
Z	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5
Y	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5
X	1.5	100	100	150	225
	2.	3.	4.	5.	
	ENTER	ENTER	ENTER		

1.

- Fills the stack with the growth rate.
- Keys in the initial population.
- Calculates the population after 1 day.
- Calculates the population after 2 days.
- Calculates the population after 3 days.

Other Uses of the **ENTER Key.** The primary purpose of the **ENTER** key is to separate two numbers entered sequentially for a calculation. **ENTER** can also be used to:

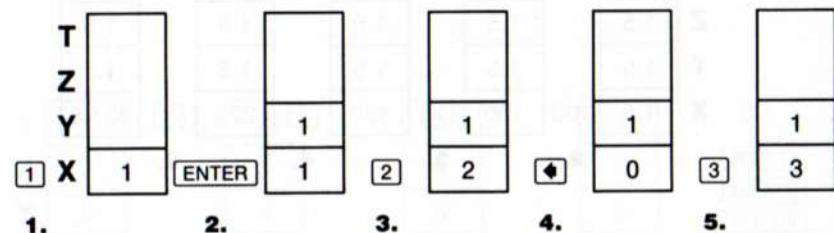
- Turn the cursor on or off in Alpha mode.
- Select the ALPHA menu when a function is prompting for a parameter.
- Complete an instruction after keying in a parameter.

How CLX Works

To prevent an unwanted zero from being added to the stack, the **CLX** function (and \blacklozenge when it clears the X-register) disables stack lift. That is, **CLX** puts a zero in the X-register, but the next number entered writes over the zero.

This feature lets you correct mistakes without interfering with the current calculation. Since stack lift does not occur, the contents of the Y-, Z-, and T-registers are left unchanged.

For example, suppose you wanted to enter 1 and 3 but mistakenly entered 1 and 2. This is what you would do:



1. Lifts the stack.
2. Lifts the stack and replicates the X-register.
3. Overwrites the X-register.
4. Clears x by overwriting it with zero.
5. Overwrites x (replaces the zero.)

The LAST X Register

The LAST X register is a companion to the stack—it holds the contents of the X-register used in the most recent numeric function.

Pressing **LASTx** recalls this value into the X-register. This ability to retrieve the "last x" has two main uses: correcting mistakes and reusing a number in a calculation.

Using **LASTx** To Correct Mistakes

Wrong One-Number Function. If you execute the wrong one-number function, use **LASTx** to retrieve the number so you can execute the correct function.

If you are in the middle of a chain calculation when you make the mistake, clear the X-register (\blacklozenge) before executing **LASTx**. This clears the incorrect result and disables stack lift so that intermediate results in the stack are not lost.

Example. Suppose that you had just calculated $4.7839^3 \times (3.879 \times 10^5)$ and wanted to find its square root (\sqrt{x}) but pressed **LOG** by mistake. You don't have to start over! To find the correct result, just press \blacklozenge **LASTx** \sqrt{x} . (\blacklozenge is needed only if you want to prevent the incorrect result from being lifted into the Y-register.)

Mistakes With Two-Number Functions. If you make a mistake with a two-number function, you can correct it by using **LASTx** and the *inverse* of the two-number function.

For mistakes with the *wrong function* or *wrong second number*:

1. Press **LASTx** to recover the second number (the one in the X-register just before the operation).
2. Execute the inverse operation. (For example, \square is the inverse of $+$ and \pm is the inverse of \times .) This returns the number that was originally first. The second number is still in the LAST X register.
3. Execute the correct calculation:
 - If you had used the *wrong function*, press **LASTx** again to restore the original stack contents. Now execute the correct function.
 - If you had used the *wrong second number*, key in the correct one and then execute the function.

For mistakes with the *wrong first number*:

1. Key in the correct first number.
2. Press **LASTx**.
3. Execute the function again.

If the contents of the other stack registers are important, clear the X register *first* to prevent the incorrect result from being lifted into the stack.

Example. Suppose you made an error while calculating

$$16 \times 19 = 304.$$

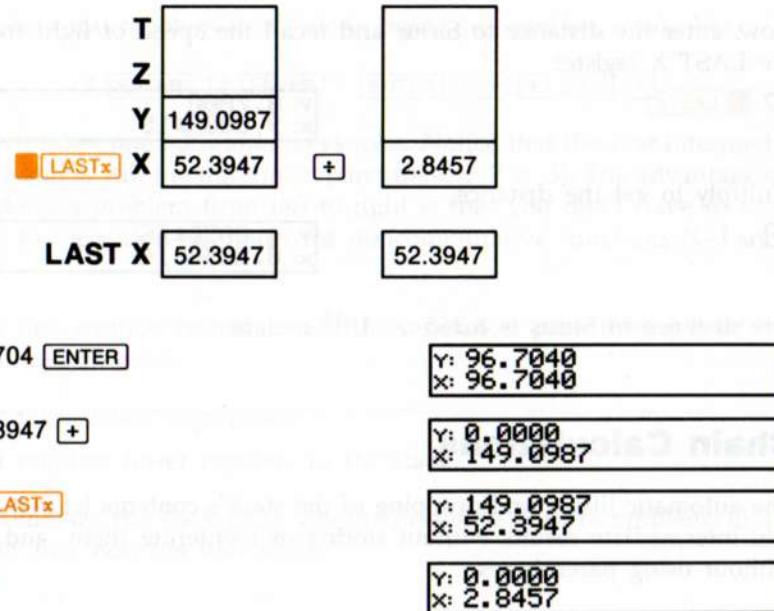
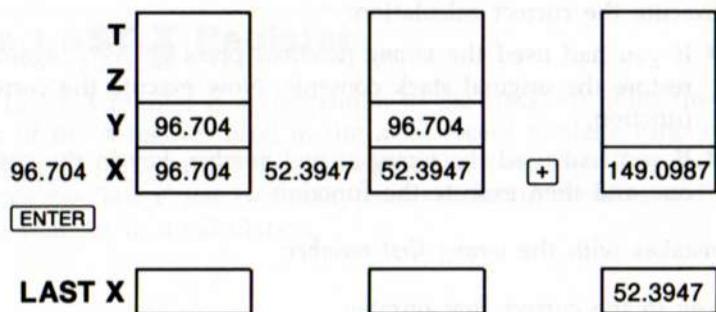
There are three kinds of mistakes you could have made:

Wrong Calculation	Mistake	Correction
16 [ENTER] 19 [-]	Wrong function.	[LASTx] [+] [LASTx] [x]
16 [ENTER] 18 [x]	Wrong second number.	[LASTx] [+] 19 [x]
15 [ENTER] 19 [x]	Wrong first number.	16 [LASTx] [x]

Using [LASTx] To Reuse Numbers

Recovering and reusing a number can be useful in short calculations that use the same number more than once. Since [LASTx] recovers the last value that was used in a calculation, you can reuse the same number. Often, pressing [LASTx] is quicker than keying the number in again.

Example. Calculate $(96.704 + 52.3947) \div 52.3947$. Remember to enter 52.3947 second so it can be reused.



Example. Two close stellar neighbors of Earth are Rigel Centaurus (4.3 light-years away) and Sirius (8.7 light-years away). Use c , the speed of light (9.5×10^{15} meters per year), to convert the distances from the Earth to these stars into meters.

Enter the distance to Rigel Centaurus and multiply by the speed of light.

4.3 [ENTER] 9.5 [E] 15 [x] [Y: 2.8457
X: 4.0850E16]

The distance to Rigel Centaurus is 4.085×10^{16} meters.

Now, enter the distance to Sirius and recall the speed of light from the LAST X register.

8.7 LASTx

Y: 8.7000
X: 9.5000E15

Multiply to get the distance.

x

Y: 4.0850E16
X: 8.2650E16

The distance to Sirius is 8.265×10^{16} meters.

Chain Calculations

The automatic lifting and dropping of the stack's contents let you retain intermediate results without storing or reentering them, and without using parentheses.

Order of Calculation

In chapter 1 we recommended solving chain calculations by working from the innermost parentheses outward. You may choose to work problems in a left-to-right order. (However, since the stack can only hold four numbers at a time, some expressions may be too long to calculate from left to right.)

For example, in chapter 1 you calculated:

$$4 \div [14 + (7 \times 3) - 2]$$

by starting with the innermost parentheses (7×3) and working outward—just as you would with pencil and paper. The keystrokes were:

7 ENTER 3 x 14 + 2 - 4 +.

Working the problem from left-to-right, the solution would be:

4 ENTER 14 ENTER 7 ENTER 3 x + 2 - +,

which takes one additional keystroke. Notice that the first intermediate result is still the innermost parentheses: (7×3) . The advantage of working a problem from left-to-right is that you don't have to use to reposition operands for noncommutative functions ($-$ and $+$).

The first method (starting with the innermost parentheses) is often preferred because:

- It takes fewer keystrokes.
- It requires fewer registers in the stack.

In summary, the stack gives you the flexibility to work problems in an order that best fits *your* needs.

Exercises: More RPN Calculations

Here are some additional problems that you can work for more practice using RPN. As demonstrated above, there's more than one way to solve most problems. Therefore, the solutions shown below are not necessarily unique.

Calculate: $(14 + 12) \times (18 - 12) \div (9 - 7)$

Answer: 78.0000

A Solution: 14 ENTER 12 + 18 ENTER 12 - x 9 ENTER 7 - +

Another Solution: 14 ENTER 12 + 18 - x 9 ENTER 7 - +

Calculate: $23^2 - (13 \times 9) + \frac{1}{7}$

Answer: 412.1429

A Solution: 23 13 ENTER 9 x - 7 1/x +

Another Solution: 23 ENTER x 13 ENTER 9 x - 7 1/x +

Calculate: $\sqrt{(5.4 \times 0.8) \div (12.5 - 0.7^3)}$

Answer: 0.5961

A Solution: 5.4 [ENTER] .8 [x] .7 [ENTER] 3 [y^x] 12.5 [x_y] [−] [+/-] [fx]

Another Solution: 5.4 [ENTER] .8 [x] 12.5 [ENTER] .7 [ENTER] 3 [y^x] [−]

[+/-] [fx]

Calculate: $\sqrt{\frac{8.33 \times (4 - 5.2) \div [(8.33 - 7.46) \times 0.32]}{4.3 \times (3.15 - 2.75) - (1.71 \times 2.01)}}$

Answer: 4.5728

A Solution: 4 [ENTER] 5.2 [−] 8.33 [x] [LASTx] 7.46 [−] .32 [x] [+/-] 3.15 [ENTER] 2.75 [−] 4.3 [x] 1.71 [ENTER] 2.01 [x] [−] [+/-] [fx]

Variables and Storage Registers

In the previous chapter, you learned how the calculator's stack provides temporary storage during calculations. For more permanent data storage, you can use variables and storage registers. In this chapter you will learn how to use [STO] (store) and [RCL] (recall) to:

- Copy data between the stack and variables or storage registers.
- Perform arithmetic with variables and registers.
- Directly access each of the stack registers.

In addition, you'll see how the [ASTO] (*Alpha store*) and [ARCL] (*Alpha recall*) functions are used to copy data between the Alpha register and variables or registers.

Storing and Recalling Data

The X-register is used in all store and recall operations. [STO] copies data from the X-register into a variable or register. [RCL] recalls data into the X-register from a variable or register.

When you press [STO] or [RCL], the calculator displays a prompt (STO __ or RCL __) and a menu of variable names. To complete the instruction, you must supply one of the following parameters to indicate what you want to store or recall:

- A variable name.
- A storage register number.
- A stack register.

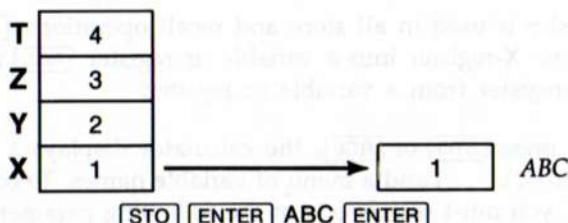
Variables

Variables are *named* storage locations. Each variable can hold any type of data, from a single number to a large, two-dimensional matrix of complex numbers. The number of variables stored in the calculator is limited only by the amount of memory available.

To store data into a variable:

1. Press **STO**.
2. Select the variable from the catalog (automatically displayed), or type the variable name using the ALPHA menu:
 - *Using the variable catalog:* If the variable name you want already exists, press the corresponding menu key. Data previously stored in the variable is overwritten with the new data.
 - *Using the ALPHA menu:*
 - a. Press **ENTER** or **ALPHA** to select the ALPHA menu.
 - b. Type the variable name (one to seven characters).*
 - c. Press **ENTER** or **ALPHA** to complete the name.

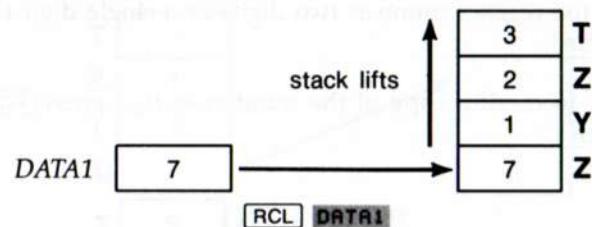
For example, to store a copy of the X-register into a variable named ABC, press **STO** **ENTER** ABC **ENTER**. If ABC already exists, press **STO** **RCL**.



To recall data from a variable:

1. Press **RCL**.
2. Select the variable from the catalog, or type the variable name using the ALPHA menu. (Refer to step 2 above.)

For example, to recall a copy of the data in the variable DATA1, press **RCL** **DATA1** (assuming DATA1 already exists).



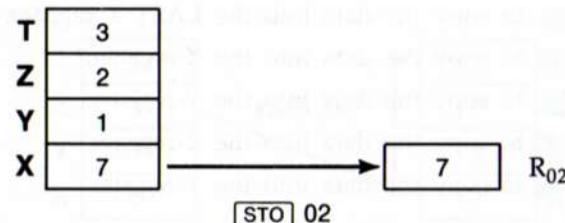
Storage Registers

Storage registers are numbered storage locations that each hold a single number. Initially, the HP-42S has 25 storage registers (designated R₀₀-R₂₄), each containing a zero. You can change the number of storage registers with the SIZE function (page 64).

To store data into a storage register:

1. Press **STO**.
2. Key in the register number: two digits *or* a single digit followed by **ENTER**. Data previously stored in the register is overwritten with the new data.

For example, to store a copy of the number in the X-register into R₀₂, press **STO** 02 *or* **STO** 2 **ENTER**.

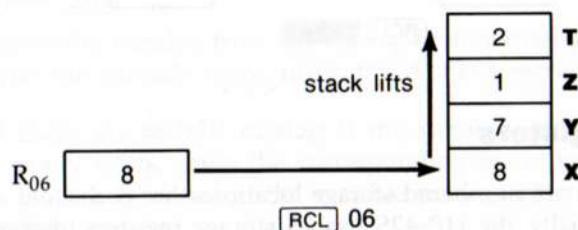


* Instructions for using the ALPHA menu are on page 37.

To recall data from a storage register:

1. Press **RCL**.
2. Key in the register number: two digits or a single digit followed by **ENTER**.

For example, to recall a copy of the number in R₀₆, press **RCL** 06 or **RCL** 6 **ENTER**.



Storing and Recalling Stack Registers

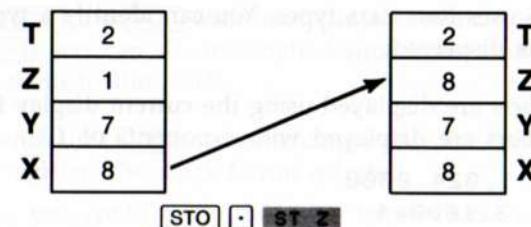
You can store and recall data directly to registers in the stack using *stack addressing*.

To store data directly into a stack register:

1. Press **STO**.
2. Press **[** to display the stack menu.
3. Press one of the following menu keys:
 - **ST L** to copy data into the LAST X register.
 - **ST X** to copy data into the X-register.*
 - **ST Y** to copy data into the Y-register.
 - **ST Z** to copy data into the Z-register.
 - **ST T** to copy data into the T-register.

* Although **STO** [**ST X** is a valid instruction, storing a copy of the X-register into itself is of little value.

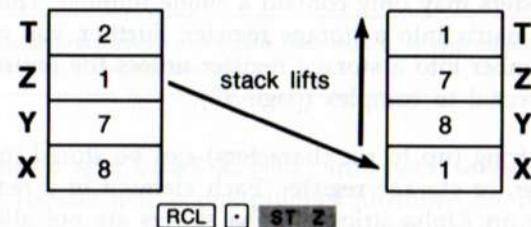
For example, to copy the data in the X-register into the Z-register, press **STO** [**ST Z**.



To recall data directly from a stack register:

1. Press **RCL**.
2. Press **[** to display the stack menu.
3. Press one of the following menu keys:
 - **ST L** to copy data from the LAST X register (equivalent to executing **LASTx**).
 - **ST X** to copy data from the X-register. (This is similar to executing **ENTER** except that stack lift is enabled.)
 - **ST Y** to copy data from the Y-register.
 - **ST Z** to copy data from the Z-register.
 - **ST T** to copy data from the T-register (equivalent to executing the **Rt** function).

For example, to recall the data in the Z-register into the X-register, press **RCL** [**ST Z**.



Data Types

The HP-42S uses four data types. You can identify a type of data by the way it is displayed:

- *Real numbers* are displayed using the current display format. Some real numbers are displayed with exponents of 10.

Examples: 1,024.0000
3.1600E4

- *Complex numbers* are displayed in two parts, separated with *i* or \angle (depending on the current coordinate mode). If a complex number is too long to be displayed in the current display mode, it is automatically displayed in ENG 2 format.

Examples: 12.1314 i15.1617 (Rectangular mode)
55.0300 \angle 90.0000 (Polar mode)

- *Alpha strings* (in the stack) are displayed with surrounding quotation marks. The quotation marks are not part of the string.

Examples: "String"
"JIM"

- *Matrices* are displayed with brackets ([and]). The dimensions of the matrix are shown (*rows* \times *columns*) and complex matrices are indicated with *Cpx*.

Examples: [3x2 Matrix]
[5x7 Cpx Matrix]

Where Data Can Be Stored. You can store any type of data into a stack register (X, Y, Z, T, or LAST X) or variable. However, individual storage registers may only contain a single number. That is, you cannot store a matrix into a storage register. Further, you cannot store a complex number into a storage register unless the entire set of registers is converted to complex (page 98).

An Alpha string (up to six characters) can be stored into a variable, stack register, or storage register. Each element in a real matrix may also contain an Alpha string. (Alpha strings are not allowed in complex matrices.)

Arithmetic With **STO** and **RCL**

By combining **STO** and **RCL** with the basic arithmetic operators (+, -, \times , and \div) you can do arithmetic using stored values without first recalling them to the stack.

- Arithmetic with the **STO** function changes only the contents of the variable or register; the stack is not affected.

For example, you could triple the value in the variable ABC by pressing 3 **STO** **X** **RBC**.

- Arithmetic with the **RCL** function calculates the result in the X-register. The contents of the variable or register and the other stack registers are not affected.

For example, you could subtract the number in R₁₂ from the number in the X-register by pressing **RCL** **-** 12.

Instruction	Result	Location of Result
STO + destination	destination + x	destination
STO - destination	destination - x	destination
STO \times destination	destination \times x	destination
STO \div destination	destination \div x	destination
RCL + source	x + source	X-register
RCL - source	x - source	X-register
RCL \times source	x \times source	X-register
RCL \div source	x \div source	X-register

Note that the *destination* and *source* may be any stack register, storage register, or variable. x denotes the contents of the X-register.

Recall Arithmetic and LAST X. **RCL** arithmetic saves the x-value in the LAST X register just as one-number functions do. Note how a normal recall instruction followed by arithmetic compares to recall arithmetic:

- 100 [RCL] 03 [+] recalls the contents of R₀₃ and then divides that value into 100. The divisor, R₀₃, is saved in the LAST X register. Since the stack lifts when you execute [RCL], the value in the T-register is lost.
- 100 [RCL] [+] 03 calculates the same result. However, the contents of LAST X are different. The numerator, 100, is saved in LAST X because it was the last x-value used in a calculation. The source, R₀₃, is never recalled to the stack. Since the stack does not lift, the value in the T-register is not lost.

Managing Variables

Clearing Variables

To clear a variable from memory:

1. Press [CLEAR] [CLV].
2. Select the variable from the catalog, or type the variable name using the ALPHA menu.

Using the Variable Catalogs

When you create a variable, the HP-42S adds that variable's name to the appropriate catalog. You can think of each catalog as a file holding variables of the same data type. To display a catalog, press [CATALOG] and then:

- [REAL] for variables containing real numbers or Alpha strings.
- [CPX] for variables containing complex numbers.
- [MAT] for variables containing matrices.

To recall a variable from a catalog, select the catalog, and then press the corresponding menu key.

Printing Variables

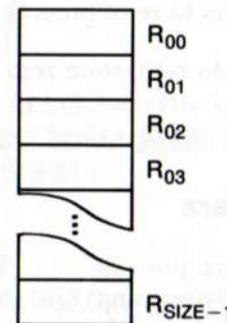
To print the contents of a single variable:

1. Press [PRINT] [PRV].
2. Select the variable from the catalog, or type the variable name using the ALPHA menu.

To print a complete list of variable names: Press [PRINT] [PRUSR] (print user). The PRUSR function prints all variable names and global program labels. The variable names are printed first, so if you're not interested in the program labels, press [R/S] to stop the listing.

Managing Storage Registers

The storage registers are maintained in the HP-42S as a matrix named REGS. Each element in the matrix is a single storage register that, as you've already seen, can be stored to or recalled from with [STO] and [RCL]. Because REGS is a variable, you can manipulate the entire set of storage registers as a single matrix. (Refer to chapter 14 for more information on matrix operations.)



Changing the Number of Storage Registers (SIZE)

The SIZE function changes the number of storage registers available. The default size is 25 registers (R_{00} – R_{24}). The maximum number of storage registers is limited by the amount of available memory. However, the [STO] and [RCL] functions can only *directly* access registers R_{00} through R_{99} . To store and recall data in registers numbered above 99, you must use *indirect addressing* (page 74).

To change the SIZE:

1. Press [MODES] ▼ [SIZE].
2. Key in the number of registers. Use one, two, or three digits followed by [ENTER] or key in all four digits.

For example, to set the SIZE to 10 registers, press: [MODES] ▼ [SIZE] 10 [ENTER].

You can also change the number of storage registers by redimensioning the REGS matrix. Refer to “Redimensioning a Matrix” in chapter 14.

Clearing Storage Registers

To clear all of the storage registers to zero, press [CLEAR] ▼ [CLRG].

To clear a single storage register to zero, store zero in it. For example, to clear R_{10} , press 0 [STO] 10.

Printing Storage Registers

To print all of the storage registers, press [PRINT] [PRV] [RECS]. You can stop the listing at any time by pressing [R/S]. Note that the registers are printed as a matrix—element 1:1 corresponds to R_{00} .

For more information, refer to chapter 7, “Printing.”

Storing and Recalling Alpha Data

When the calculator is in Alpha mode, the [STO] and [RCL] keys are redefined as [ASTO] (*Alpha store*) and [ARCL] (*Alpha recall*). These Alpha functions are used to copy data to and from the Alpha register in the same way [STO] and [RCL] are used to move data to and from the X-register.

There are several other functions for working with Alpha data. Refer to “Working With Alpha Data” in chapter 9.

Storing Alpha Data (ASTO)

The ASTO function copies the six left-most characters in the Alpha register into a variable or register. Variables containing Alpha strings are located in the real-variable catalog ([CATALOG] [REAL]).

Example: Storing Alpha Data. Type a string of characters into the Alpha register and store the string (the first six characters) into R_{03} . Turn Alpha mode on. (If you worked the last example in chapter 1, the string The HP-42S. may still be in the Alpha register. It disappears as soon as you start typing a new string.)

[ALPHA]

The HP-42S.
HECODE FGHI JKLM NOPQ RSTUV WXYZ

Type in the string RESULT=. (The keystrokes are [RSTUV] [R] [ABCDE] [E] [RSTUV] [S] [RSTUV] [U] [JKLM] [L] [RSTUV] [T] ▼ [< = >] [=] [.])

RESULT=

RESULT=_
[< = >] [=] [MATH] [PUNC] [MISC]

Now, store the string into R_{03} . (Remember, to execute the ASTO function, press [STO] when Alpha mode is on.)

[ASTO] 03

RESULT=_
[< = >] [=] [MATH] [PUNC] [MISC]

Exit Alpha mode and recall R₀₃ into the X-register.

EXIT **RCL** 03

Y: 0.0000
X: "RESULT"

This is what an Alpha string looks like when it is in the stack. The = character is not included because strings stored in variables and registers are limited to six characters.

Recalling Alpha Data (ARCL)

The ARCL function copies data in a variable or register into the Alpha register. If the Alpha register already contains a string, the recalled data is appended to it.

If you recall a number into the Alpha register, the ARCL function converts it into Alpha characters using the current display format.

Example: Recalling Data to the Alpha Register. Calculate 5³ and append the result to the Alpha register (which should contain RESULT= from the previous example). Remember, to execute the ARCL function, press **RCL** when Alpha mode is on.

5 **ENTER** **3** **y^x** **ALPHA**

RESULT=
HECDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ

ARCL **ST X**

RESULT=125.0000
HECDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ

Display the contents of the Alpha register using the AVIEW function.

PGM.FCN **AVIEW**

RESULT=125.0000
x: 125.0000

The viewed information can be cleared from the display like any other message.

◆

Y: "RESULT"
x: 125.0000

Executing Functions

The HP-42S has over 600 built-in functions – far too many to fit them all on the keyboard. Because of this, there are several ways to execute functions. You've already learned how to execute functions that appear on the keyboard and in menus. In this chapter you will learn three additional ways to execute functions:

- *Using the function catalog.* Press **CATALOG** **FCN** to display a menu containing all of the calculator's functions. The functions are arranged in alphabetical order with special characters at the end.
- *Using the CUSTOM menu.* You can create a menu containing the functions, programs, and variables you use most often.
- *Using the XEQ (execute) key.* You can execute any calculator function by pressing **XEQ** and then typing the function name using the ALPHA menu.

You will also learn how to:

- Specify a parameter when a function prompts for additional information.
- Preview an instruction by holding down a key.

Using the Function Catalog

To execute a function using the function catalog:

1. Press **CATALOG** **FCN**. (If you are planning on executing more than one function, you can prevent automatic exiting by selecting the CATALOG menu twice: **CATALOG** **CATALOG** **FCN**.)

2. Find the function you want to execute:

- Use the **▲** and **▼** keys to move up and down through the menu. If you hold either of these keys down, they repeat so you can scroll quickly through the menu.
- To return to the top of the catalog, press **EXIT** **FCN**.

3. To execute a function, press the corresponding menu key.

Example: Using the Function Catalog. Use the ASINH (*hyperbolic arc sine*) function to determine the hyperbolic arc sine of 15.

15

CATALOG	FCN
----------------	------------

Y: 0.0000
X: 15_

X: 15.0000
HES ACOS ACOSH ADV AGRA API

Use the **▼** key to search the catalog until you find ASINH.

▼ **▼**

X: 15.0000
HACL HADT HSHF HSIN HSINH HSGN

Y: 0.0000
X: 3.4023

The hyperbolic arc sine of 15 is 3.4023 (to four decimal places).

Using the CUSTOM Menu

The CUSTOM menu contains 18 blank menu labels. Each label can be redefined by assigning the name of a function, program, or variable. Therefore, you can tailor your own menu to include functions, programs, and variables you use most often.

Making CUSTOM Menu Key Assignments

To make a key assignment:

1. Press **ASSIGN**.

2. Use a catalog or the ALPHA menu to specify the function, program, or variable you want to assign:

- *Using a catalog:*

- a. Press **FCN**, **PGM**, **REAL**, **CPX**, or **MAT**.
- b. Press the menu key corresponding to the item you want to assign.

- *Using the ALPHA menu:*

- a. Press **ENTER** or **ALPHA** to select the ALPHA menu.
- b. Type the name of the function, program, or variable.
- c. Press **ENTER** or **ALPHA** to complete the name.

3. Press the menu key for the label to be assigned. There are 18 menu labels in the CUSTOM menu (numbered 01 through 18). Press **▼** to display the second row (labels 07 through 12). Press **▼** again to display the third row (labels 13 through 18). If you press a key for a label that already has an assignment, the new assignment replaces the previous one.

Example: Using the CUSTOM Menu. Assign the ACOSH (*hyperbolic arc cosine*) function to the first key in the CUSTOM menu and calculate the arc hyperbolic cosine of 27.

ASSIGN **FCN**

ASSIGN "	_				
HES	ACOS	ACOSH	ADV	AGRA	API

The ACOSH function is in the first row of the function catalog.

ACOSH

ASSIGN "ACOSH" TO _

Now press the first key in the CUSTOM menu (**Σ+**).

Σ+

x: 3.4023
ACOSH

The assignment is ready to use.

27 ACOSH

x: 3.9886
ACOSH

Thus, the arc hyperbolic cosine of 27 is 3.9886 (to four decimal places).

Unlike other function menus, CUSTOM does not automatically exit after each use. Press **EXIT**.

Clearing CUSTOM Menu Key Assignments

To clear a single key assignment:

1. Press **ASSIGN**.
2. Press **ENTER ENTER** or **ALPHA ALPHA**. This terminates the prompt for a name.
3. Press the CUSTOM menu key for the label whose assignment you want to clear.

To clear all key assignments:

1. Press **CLEAR** **▼** to select the second row of the CLEAR menu.
2. Press **CLKY**.

Using the **XEQ** Key

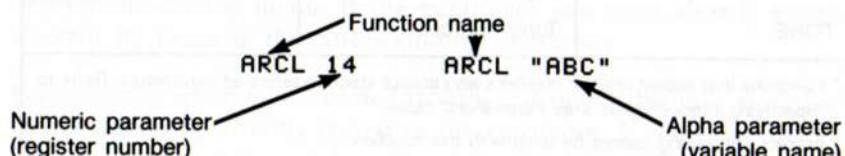
To execute a function with **XEQ**:

1. Press **XEQ**.
2. Press **ENTER** or **ALPHA** to select the ALPHA menu.
3. Type the name of the function.
4. Press **ENTER** or **ALPHA** to complete the entry.

For example, you can execute the BEEP function by pressing **XEQ** **ENTER** **BEEP** **ENTER**.*

Specifying Parameters

Many functions require a parameter to specify exactly what the function is to do. For example, the ARCL function interprets a numeric parameter as a register number and an Alpha parameter as a variable name. Refer to the table below.



Functions That Require One Parameter

Functions	Numeric Parameter	Alpha Parameter
ARCL, ASTO, DSE, INPUT, ISG, RCL, STO, VIEW, X<>	Register number.*	Variable name.
ΣREG	Register number.*	-
CLV, DIM, EDITN, INDEX, INTEG, MVAR, PRV, SOLVE	-	Variable name.
CF, FC?, FC?C, FS?, FS?C, SF	Flag number.	-
ENG, FIX, SCI	Number of digits.	-
GTO, LBL†	Numeric program label.	Alpha program label.
XEQ	Numeric program label.	Function name or Alpha program label.
CLP,† PGMINT, PGMSLV, PRPT†	-	Alpha program label.

* Functions that accept register numbers also accept stack registers as parameters. Refer to "Specifying Stack Registers as Parameters" below.

† Indirect addressing cannot be used with this function.

* If you are not sure how to type BEEP, refer to the instructions for using the ALPHA menu on page 37.

Functions That Require One Parameter (Continued)

Functions	Numeric Parameter	Alpha Parameter
DEL, [†] LIST [†]	Number of program lines.	-
SIZE [†]	Number of storage registers.	-
TONE	Tone number.	-

* Functions that accept register numbers also accept stack registers as parameters. Refer to "Specifying Stack Registers as Parameters" below.

[†] Indirect addressing cannot be used with this function.

Functions That Require Two Parameters

Functions	First Parameter	Second Parameter
ASSIGN	Function name, Alpha program label, or variable name. [†]	Key number (01 through 18). [†]
KEYG, KEYX	Key number (1 through 9). [†]	Program label (local or global).

[†] Cannot be specified using indirect addressing.

Numeric Parameters

Functions that accept numeric parameters display a cursor for each digit expected. For example, the **FIX** function prompts you with **FIX __**, which takes two digits.

To complete an instruction with a numeric parameter:

- Key a digit for each position marked by a cursor. Include leading zeros if there are any.
- Or, key in fewer digits and complete the function by pressing **ENTER**.

For example, you can set the SIZE to 9 storage registers by pressing **MODES** **▼** **SIZE** followed by 9 **ENTER** or 0009.

Alpha Parameters

If the function accepts Alpha parameters, you can select the ALPHA menu by pressing **ENTER** or **ALPHA**. After typing the parameter, press **ENTER** or **ALPHA** to complete the instruction. Digits typed while the ALPHA menu is displayed are treated as Alpha characters.

Many functions that take Alpha parameters automatically display an appropriate catalog menu. If the parameter you need already exists, select it by pressing the corresponding menu key.

For example, when you execute **STO** the calculator displays a catalog of all variables currently stored in the calculator. If there are more than six entries in the catalog, the **▼** annunciator indicates that you can use **▼** and **▲** to display the additional rows of the catalog menu.

Specifying Stack Registers as Parameters

Any function that uses a numbered storage register can also access any of the stack registers (X, Y, Z, T, and LAST X).

To specify a stack register as a parameter:

1. Execute the function. (For example, press **STO**.)
2. Press **□**.
3. Specify which register you want to address:
 - **ST L** for the LAST X register.
 - **ST X** for the X-register.
 - **ST Y** for the Y-register.
 - **ST Z** for the Z-register.
 - **ST T** for the T-register.

Refer to page 59 for examples using stack parameters.

Indirect Addressing—Parameters Stored Elsewhere

Parameters for many functions can be specified using *indirect addressing*. That is, rather than entering the parameter itself as part of the instruction, you supply the variable, storage register, or stack register that contains the actual parameter.

Indirect addressing is particularly useful in programs when the parameter for a function is calculated.

To specify a parameter using indirect addressing:

1. Execute the function.
2. Press **IND**. If the calculator displays **IND** __ after the function name, skip to step 4.
3. Press **IND**.
4. Specify where the actual parameter is located:
 - *In a variable.* Press a menu key to select the variable (the real-variable catalog is automatically displayed if there are any real variables) or type the name of the variable using the ALPHA menu.
 - *In a storage register.* Key in the register number (two digits or a single digit followed by **[ENTER]**).
 - *In a stack register.* Press **[.]** followed by **ST L**, **ST X**, **ST Y**, **ST Z**, or **ST T**.



Note

Alpha parameters specified indirectly are limited to six characters because Alpha strings stored in variables and registers are limited to six characters.

Example: Indirect Addressing Using a Variable. Store 3 into ABC. Then store $\sqrt{7}$ in R₀₃ using indirect addressing.

3 **STO** **ENTER** ABC **ENTER**

Y: 3.9886
X: 3.0000

7 **[\sqrt{x}]**

Y: 3.0000
X: 2.6458

STO **[.]** **IND** ABC

Y: 3.0000
X: 2.6458

To see that the instruction was successful, recall the contents of R₀₃.

RCL 03

Y: 2.6458
X: 2.6458

Exercises: Specifying Parameters

Task: Set the display format to two decimal places.

Keystrokes: **[DISP]** **FIX** 02

Task: Set the display format to engineering notation using the number of digits specified in the X-register.

Keystrokes: **[DISP]** **ENG** **[.]** **[.]** ST X

Task: Store a copy of the X-register into the variable or storage register specified in the Y-register.

Keystrokes: **STO** **[.]** **IND** **[.]** ST Y

Task: Copy the first six characters of the Alpha register into the X-register. (In Alpha mode, the **STO** key executes the ASTO function.)

Keystrokes: **[ALPHA]** **ASTO** **[.]** ST X

Task: Append a copy of the data in the T-register to the contents of the Alpha register. (In Alpha mode, the **RCL** key executes the ARCL function.)

Keystrokes: **[ALPHA]** **ARCL** **[.]** ST T

Task: Test the flag specified by the number in the variable F (assuming F already exists).

Keystrokes: **[FLAGS]** **FS?** **[.]** F

Function Preview and NULL

When you hold down a key that executes a function, the name of the function is displayed. This is a *preview* of the function.

If you hold the key down for about a second, the word **NULL** replaces the function name in the display and the function is not executed. If you release the key before **NULL** is displayed, the instruction is executed.

For example, press and hold the **TAN** key.

TAN (hold down)

TAN
x: 2.6458

NULL
x: 2.6458

The **NULL** message remains in the display until you release the key and the **TAN** function is not executed.

(release)

y: 2.6458
x: 2.6458

You can preview instructions that include parameters by holding down the last key in the sequence that executes the instruction.

15 **STO** 02 (hold down the **[2]** key)

STO 02
x: 15.0000

NULL
x: 15.0000

y: 2.6458
x: 15.0000

(release)

Since the instruction was aborted, the data in R₀₂ was not overwritten.

Numeric Functions

Most of the functions built into the HP-42S are for numeric calculations. This chapter describes numeric functions for:

- General mathematics.
- Percent and percent change.
- Trigonometric calculations and conversions.
- Altering parts of numbers.
- Probability.
- Hyperbolics.

Many of the functions presented in this chapter do not appear on the HP-42S keyboard. The preceding chapter, "Executing Functions," describes how to execute functions that are not on the keyboard or in a menu.

Remember, there are two types of numeric functions:

- *One-number* functions, which replace the number in the X-register with a result (page 29).
- *Two-number* functions, which replace the numbers in the X- and Y-registers with a result and drop the stack (page 30).

General Mathematical Functions

The following table summarizes the general mathematical functions on the HP-42S keyboard. The Alpha name for each function is displayed when you hold down the key or when the function is entered into a program.

One-Number Functions

To Calculate	Press	Alpha Name
Negative of x .	+/-	+/-
Reciprocal of x .	1/x	1/X
Square root of x .	\sqrt{x}	SQRT
Square of x .	x^2	X ²
Common logarithm of x .	LOG	LOG
Common exponential of x .	10^x	10 ^x
Natural logarithm of x .	LN	LN
Natural exponential of x .	e^x	E ^x

Two-Number Functions

To Calculate	Press	Alpha Name
Sum of x and y ($x + y$).	+	+
Difference of x and y ($y - x$).	-	-
Product of x and y ($x \times y$).	x	x
Quotient of x and y ($y \div x$).	÷	÷
y to the x (y^x).	y^x	Y ^x

Example: Calculating a Cube Root. Calculate $\sqrt[3]{14}$. Since this can be expressed as an exponent ($14^{1/3}$), use the $\boxed{y^x}$ function.

14 **ENTER** 3

Y: 14.0000
X: 3_

1/x

Y: 14.0000
X: 0.3333

y^x

Y: 0.0000
X: 2.4101

The cube root of 14 is 2.4101 (to four decimal places).

Percentages

The percentage functions are special two-number functions because, unlike other two-number functions, the stack does not drop when the result is returned to the X-register.

Simple Percent

The percent function ($\boxed{\%}$) calculates $x\%$ of y . For example, to calculate 12% of 300:

300 **ENTER** 12 **%**

Y: 300.0000
X: 36.0000

Since the original value is preserved in the Y-register, you can easily calculate another percentage of the same number. Clear the X-register and calculate 25% of 300.

25 %

Y: 300.0000
X: 75.0000

The preservation of the y -value is also useful if you want to add it to the calculated percentage.

+

Y: 2.4101
X: 375.0000

This result is 300 plus 25% of 300 (or 125% of 300).

Percent Change

The %CH (percent change) function calculates the percentage of change from y to x .

Example: Calculating a Percent Change. The cost of blouses at Sonja's Boutique recently rose from \$24.99 to \$26.99. What was the percentage increase?

24.99 **ENTER** 26.99

Y: 24.9900
X: 26.99_

Y: 24.9900
X: 8.0032

The price increased slightly more than 8%.

Trigonometry

Setting Trigonometric Modes

The first row of the MODES menu (■ MODES) shows two sets of modes:

- The *angular mode* tells the HP-42S what unit of measure to assume for numbers used with trigonometric functions.
 $360 \text{ degrees} = 2\pi \text{ radians} = 400 \text{ grads}$
- The *coordinate mode* indicates how complex numbers are displayed—rectangular or polar notation. Refer to chapter 6 for a complete description of complex numbers.

To change a mode, press the corresponding menu key.



Trigonometric Functions

To calculate the sine, cosine, or tangent of an angle, use the trigonometric functions on the keyboard. For example, to calculate the sine of 30° , press 30 SIN.

To calculate an angle, use the inverse trigonometric functions on the keyboard. For example, to calculate the angle that produces a sine of 0.866, press .866 ■ ASIN (arc sine).

The trigonometric functions (including the inverse functions) observe the current angular mode for all calculations.

Example: Using the COS Function. Show that the cosine of $(5/7)\pi$ radians and the cosine of 128.57° are the same (to four decimal places). Start by setting Radians mode (RAD turns on).

■ MODES RAD

Y: 24.9900
X: 8.0032

Calculate $(5/7)\pi$.

5 ENTER 7 ÷ ■ T X

Y: 8.0032
X: 2.2440

Calculate the cosine of $(5/7)\pi$.

COS

Y: 8.0032
X: -0.6235

Now, switch to Degrees mode (RAD turns off).

■ MODES DEG

Y: 8.0032
X: -0.6235

Calculate the cosine of 128.57° .

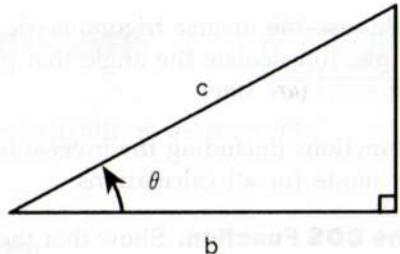
128.57 COS

Y: -0.6235
X: -0.6235

When you're done, both results are in the display for you to compare.

Example: Calculating an Angle. The angle θ in the following triangle can be determined by using the arc (inverse) trigonometric functions.

* Default setting.



$$\theta = \text{arc sine } (a/c) = \text{arc cosine } (b/c) = \text{arc tangent } (a/b)$$

Suppose $a = 4$ and $c = 8$. What is θ ?

4 [ENTER] 8 [+]

Y: -0.6235
X: 0.5000

Y: -0.6235
X: 30.0000

The angle θ is 30° .

The Conversion Functions

The first row of the CONVERT menu ([CONVERT]) contains six functions for converting trigonometric units or coordinates.

[CONVERT]	[+DEG]	Radians to degrees.
	[+RAD]	Degrees to radians.
	[+HR]	Hours-minutes-seconds to hours.
	[+HMS]	Hours to hours-minutes-seconds.
	[+REC]	Polar to rectangular.
	[+POL]	Rectangular to polar.

Converting Between Degrees and Radians

The →DEG (to degrees) function converts a real number in the X-register from radians into decimal degrees. Conversely, the →RAD (to radians) function converts a real number in the X-register from decimal degrees into radians. (The current angular mode is ignored by these two functions.)

For example, convert 0.5 radians to degrees.

.5 [CONVERT] →DEG

Y: 30.0000
X: 28.6479

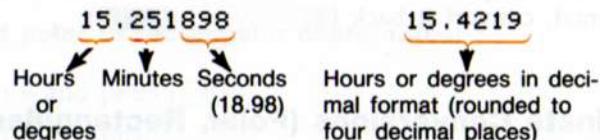
Convert 30° to radians.

30 [CONVERT] →RAD

Y: 28.6479
X: 0.5236

Using the Hours-Minutes-Seconds Format

The HP-42S has four functions for working with numbers expressed in hours-minutes-seconds format. You may use this format for time values (H.MMSSss) or angles expressed in degrees (D.MMSSss). For example, the following numbers could represent the time 15:25:18.98 or the angle $15^\circ 25' 18.98''$:



Converting Between Formats. Values for time (in hours) or angles (in degrees) can be converted between decimal-fraction form and hours-minutes-seconds form using the one-number functions →HR (to decimal hours) and →HMS (to hours-minutes-seconds).

For example, convert 1.25 hours to hours-minutes-seconds format.

1.25 [CONVERT] →HMS

Y: 0.5236
X: 1.1500

Executing →HR would change 1.1500 (that is, 1:15:00 or $1^\circ 15' 00''$) back to 1.2500.

Arithmetic With Minutes and Seconds. To add and subtract time (or angle) values in hours-minutes-seconds form, use the HMS+ (hours-minutes-seconds, add) and HMS- (hours-minutes-seconds, subtract) functions.

For example, if a meeting started at 9:47 a.m. and adjourned at 1:02 p.m., how long was the meeting? Enter the two times in hours-minutes-seconds format. (Enter 1:02 p.m. as 13:02.)

13.02 **ENTER** 9.47

Y: 13.0200
X: 9.47_

Execute HMS- using the function catalog.

CATALOG **FCH**

Use **▼** and **▲** to find the HMS- function. (Remember, these keys repeat if you hold them down.) When you find the function, execute it by pressing the corresponding menu key.

HMS-

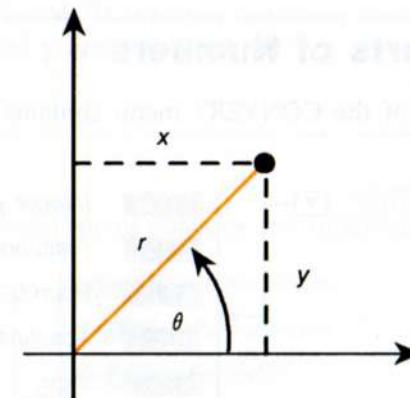
Y: 1.1500
X: 3.1500

The meeting lasted 3 hours and 15 minutes.

To multiply or divide using an hours-minutes-seconds value, first convert the number to decimal hours (**CONVERT** **HR**), then perform the arithmetic. If you need the result expressed in hours-minutes-seconds format, convert it back (**CONVERT** **HMS**).

Coordinate Conversions (Polar, Rectangular)

The coordinate conversion functions are **→REC** (to rectangular) and **→POL** (to polar). The rectangular coordinates (x,y) and the polar coordinates (r,θ) are measured as shown in the illustration below. The angle θ is measured in the units set by the current angular mode. (The current coordinate mode is ignored by these two functions.)



Before converting a set of coordinates, be sure the angular mode is set to the proper units for θ (page 80).

To convert rectangular to polar coordinates:

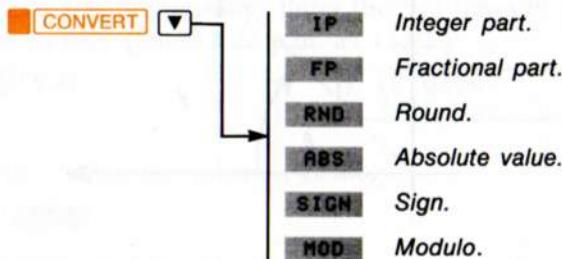
1. Key in the y -coordinate and press **ENTER**.
2. Key in the x -coordinate.
3. Press **CONVERT** **→POL**. The polar coordinates $(r$ and $\theta)$ replace x and y in the X- and Y-registers.

To convert polar to rectangular coordinates:

1. Key in θ and press **ENTER**.
2. Key in the radius, r .
3. Press **CONVERT** **→REC**. The rectangular coordinates $(x$ and $y)$ replace r and θ in the X- and Y-registers.

Altering Parts of Numbers

The second row of the CONVERT menu contains the following functions:



Integer Part (IP). The IP function removes the fractional part of a real number. For example, the integer part of 14.2300 is 14.0000.

Fractional Part (FP). The FP function removes the integer part of a real number. For example, the fractional part of 14.2300 is 0.2300.

Rounding Numbers (RND). The RND function rounds a real number to the number of digits specified by the current display format. For example, to round a dollar value to the nearest penny, set the display format to FIX 2 and then execute RND (**DISP** **FIX** 02 **CONVERT** **RND**).

Absolute Value (ABS). The ABS function replaces the number in the X-register with its absolute value. If the X-register contains a complex number, ABS returns r (the radius).

The Sign of a Number (SIGN). The SIGN function tests a real number in the X-register and returns:

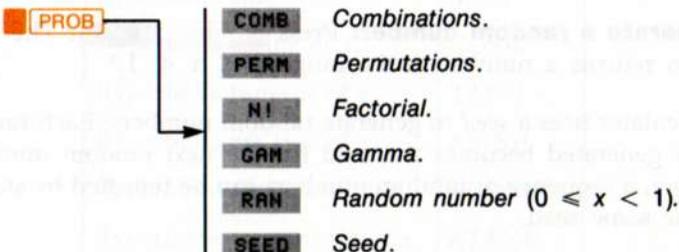
- 1 if x is a number greater than or equal to zero.
- -1 if x is a number less than zero.
- 0 if x is not a number.

If the X-register contains a complex number, SIGN returns the two-dimensional unit vector (which is also a complex number).

Modulo (MOD). The MOD function calculates the remainder of $y \div x$ (where x and y are real numbers).

Probability

The PROB (probability) menu contains the following functions:



The Probability Functions

Combinations. The COMB (combinations) function calculates the number of possible sets of y different items taken in quantities of x items at a time. No item occurs more than once in a set, and different orders of the same x items are *not* counted separately. The formula is

$$C_{y,x} = \frac{y!}{x!(y-x)!}.$$

Permutations. The PERM (permutations) function calculates the number of possible different arrangements of y different items taken in quantities of x items at a time. No item occurs more than once in an arrangement, and different orders of the same x items *are* counted separately. The formula is

$$P_{y,x} = \frac{y!}{(y-x)!}.$$

Factorials. The N! (factorial) function calculates the factorial of the real number (integers only) in the X-register. For example, calculate 5!.

Y: 3.1500
X: 120.0000

Gamma. The GAMMA function calculates $\Gamma(x)$. Key in x and then press **PROB GAM**.

Generating a Random Number

To generate a random number: Press **PROB RAN**. The RAN function returns a number in the range $0 \leq x < 1$.*

The calculator uses a *seed* to generate random numbers. Each random number generated becomes the seed for the next random number. Therefore, a sequence of random numbers can be repeated by starting with the same seed.

To store a new seed:

1. Key in any real number.
2. Press **PROB SEED**.

Whenever Continuous Memory is reset, the seed is reset to zero. When the seed is equal to zero, the calculator generates a seed internally.

Hyperbolic Functions

To use a hyperbolic function, key in x , then execute the function (See chapter 4, Executing Functions).

To Calculate:	Execute:
Hyperbolic sine of x .	SINH
Hyperbolic cosine of x .	COSH
Hyperbolic tangent of x .	TANH
Hyperbolic arc sine of x .	ASINH
Hyperbolic arc cosine of x .	ACOSH
Hyperbolic arc tangent of x .	ATANH

* The random number generator in the HP-42S actually returns a number that is part of a uniformly distributed pseudorandom number sequence. This sequence passes the spectral test (D. Knuth, *Seminumerical Algorithms*, vol. 2, London: Addison Wesley, 1981).

6

Complex Numbers

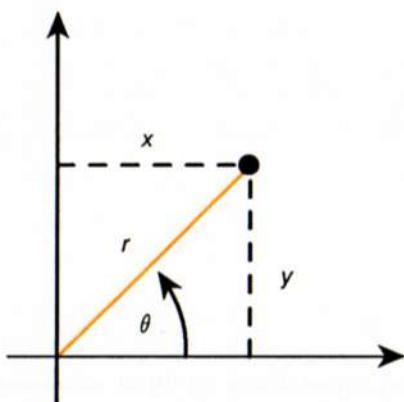
As mentioned in chapter 3, complex numbers are one of the four types of data used by the HP-42S. In this chapter you will learn:

- How to enter complex numbers.
- How complex numbers are stored and displayed.
- How to do arithmetic with complex numbers.
- How to convert the storage registers to hold complex numbers.

Entering Complex Numbers

There are two common notations for writing a complex number z :

- **Rectangular form:** $z = x + iy$.
- **Polar form:** $z = r \angle \theta$.



The following relationships exist and define how the two forms are related.

$$x = r \cos \theta$$

$$y = r \sin \theta$$

$$r = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$$

$$i = \sqrt{-1}$$

There are two parts to a complex number: x and y , or r and θ . Each part may be any real number. The angle θ is expressed using the current angular mode (Degrees, Radians, or Grads).

To key in a complex number:

1. If necessary, set the correct coordinate and angular modes (using the MODES menu).
2. Key in the left-hand part (x or r); press [ENTER].
3. Key in the right-hand part (y or θ).
4. Press [COMPLEX] to convert the two real numbers in the X- and Y-registers to a complex number in the X-register. Each part is displayed using the current display format.

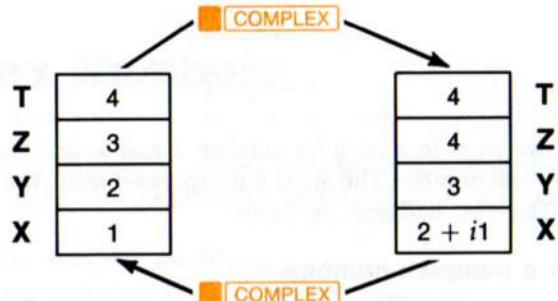
For example, to key in the complex number $2 + i1$, press 2 [ENTER] 1 [COMPLEX].

The coordinate mode (Rectangular or Polar) determines how the calculator interprets and displays complex numbers (as $x + iy$ or $r \angle \theta$).

How [COMPLEX] Works:

- If the X- and Y-registers contain real numbers, executing [COMPLEX] combines them to form a complex number.

- If the X-register contains a complex number, executing **COMPLEX** separates the number into two real numbers. The left-hand part goes into the Y-register and the right-hand part stays in the X-register.

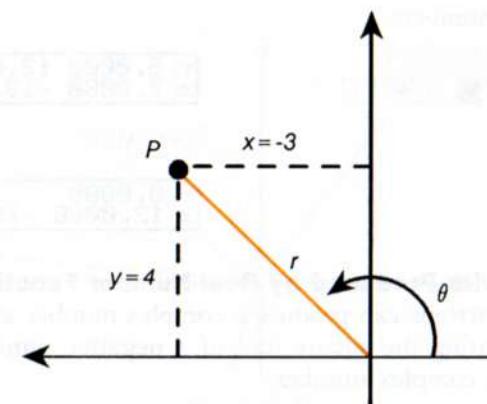


How Complex Numbers Are Displayed

Internally, the calculator always stores complex numbers in rectangular form. This has the following effects when Polar mode is used:

- The angle θ is always *normalized*. That is, the angle portion of a complex number is never larger than $\pm 180^\circ$ ($\pm \pi$ radians).
- If a complex number is keyed in with a negative radius, the radius is made positive. The angle θ is increased by 180° (π radians) and then normalized.
- If a complex number is keyed in with a radius of zero, the angle portion of the number is also reduced to zero.

If either part of a complex number is too large or too small to display using the current display format, both parts are displayed using engineering notation (ENG 2). To view both parts of a complex number using full precision, press and hold **SHOW**.



The following four complex numbers are equivalent representations of the point P shown above.

Coordinate Mode:	Angular Mode:	Display:
Rectangular	Any	-3.0000 i4.0000
Polar	Degrees	5.0000 ∠126.8699
Polar	Radians	5.0000 ∠2.2143
Polar	Grads	5.0000 ∠140.9666

Arithmetic With Complex Numbers

Most of the arithmetic functions in the previous chapter work with complex numbers as well as real numbers. For example, calculate the following expression:

$$(5 + i3) + (7 - i9).$$

Ensure the calculator is in Rectangular mode.

MODES **RECT**

Y: 0.0000
X: 0.0000

Enter the two numbers.

5 [ENTER] 3 [COMPLEX]
7 [ENTER] 9 [+/-] [COMPLEX]

Y: 5.0000 i3.0000
X: 7.0000 -i9.0000

And add them.

[+]
Y: 0.0000
X: 12.0000 -i6.0000

Complex Results Produced by Real-Number Functions. Some real-number functions can produce a complex number as a result. For example, calculating the square root of a negative number produces the appropriate complex number.

Multiply the result from the calculation above by $\sqrt{-25}$.*

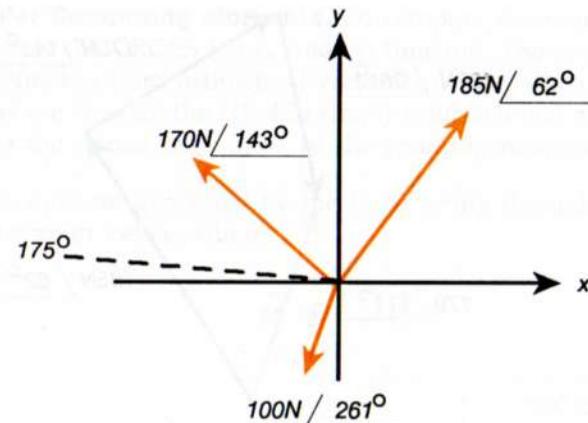
25 [+/-] [\sqrt{x}]
Y: 12.0000 -i6.0000
X: 0.0000 i5.0000

[x]
Y: 0.0000
X: 30.0000 i60.0000

Vector Operations Using Complex Numbers

A complex number can represent a vector in a two-dimensional plane. Using the vector functions in the second row of the MATRIX menu (page 220), you can perform vector operations with complex numbers.

Example: Dot Product of Complex Numbers. The figure below represents three two-dimensional force vectors. Use complex numbers and add the three vectors. Then use the DOT (dot product) function to find the component of the resulting vector along the 175° line.



Select Degrees and Polar modes.

[MODES] DEG [MODES] POLAR
Y: 0.0000
X: 67.0820 \angle 63.4349

Add the three vectors.

185 [ENTER] 62 [COMPLEX]
Y: 67.0820 \angle 63.4349
X: 185.0000 \angle 62.0000

170 [ENTER] 143 [COMPLEX]
Y: 185.0000 \angle 62.0000
X: 170.0000 \angle 143.0000

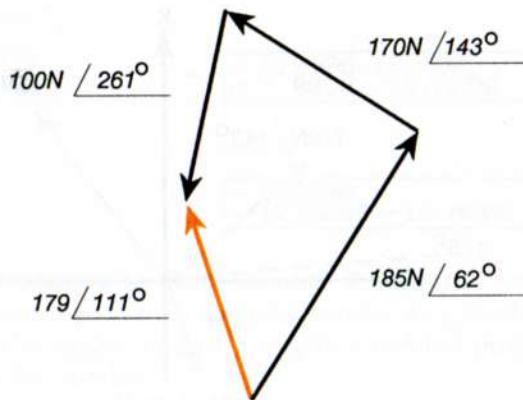
[+]
Y: 67.0820 \angle 63.4349
X: 270.1198 \angle 100.4332

100 [ENTER] 261 [COMPLEX]
Y: 270.1198 \angle 100.4332
X: 100.0000 \angle -99.0000

[+]
Y: 67.0820 \angle 63.4349
X: 178.9372 \angle 111.1489

Thus, the resulting sum is a force of approximately 179 Newtons at 111° .

* The calculator's ability to produce complex results with real-number functions can be disabled by pressing [MODES] \blacktriangledown [RRES] (real results only). To enable complex results (after they have been disabled with [RRES]), press [MODES] \blacktriangledown [CRES] (complex-result enable).



Now calculate the 175° component of this result.

1 [ENTER] 175 [COMPLEX]

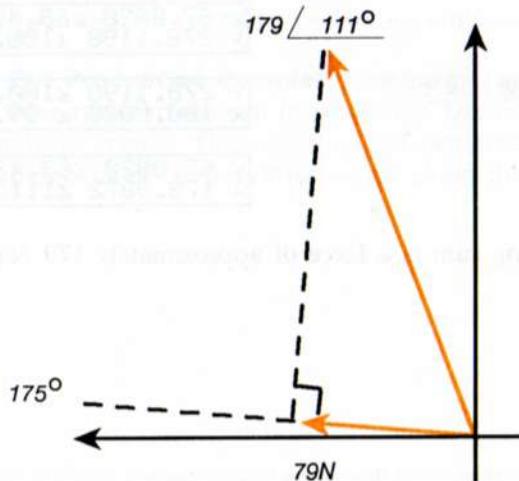
Y: 178.9372 ∠111.1489
X: 1.0000 ∠175.0000

[MATRIX] [DOT]

X: 78.8586
DOT CROSS UVEC DIM INDEX EDITN

Thus, the resulting sum has a component of approximately 79 Newtons in the direction of 175° .

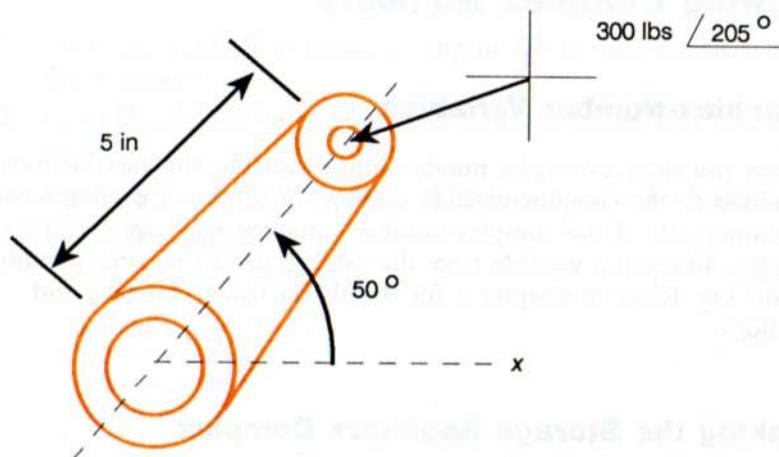
[EXIT]



Example: Computing Moments. To compute the moment of two vectors, use the CROSS (cross product) function. The cross product of two vectors is a third orthogonal vector. However, when two complex numbers are crossed, the HP-42S simply returns a real number that is equal to the signed magnitude of the resulting moment vector.

Find the moment generated by the force acting through the lever in the illustration below, where

$$\vec{M} = \vec{r} \times \vec{F}$$



Select Degrees and Polar modes. (You can skip this step if you have already selected these modes.)

[MODES] DEG [MODES] POLAR

Y: 67.0820 ∠63.4349
X: 78.8586

Key in the radius vector and the force vector.

5 [ENTER] 50 [COMPLEX]

Y: 78.8586
X: 5.0000 ∠50.0000

300 [ENTER] 205 [COMPLEX]

Y: 5.0000 ∠50.0000
X: 300.0000 ∠-155.0000

Calculate the cross product.

MATRIX ▾ CROSS

x: 633.9274
DOT CROSS UVEC DIM INDEX EDITN

The moment vector has a magnitude of 634 and, since the result is positive, the vector points up, perpendicular to the plane of this page.*

EXIT

Storing Complex Numbers

Complex-Number Variables

When you store a complex number into a variable, the variable name is added to the complex-variable catalog. To display a catalog menu containing all of the complex-number variables, press CATALOG CPX. To recall a variable from the catalog, press the corresponding menu key. Refer to chapter 3 for details on using variables and catalogs.

Making the Storage Registers Complex

Normally, each storage register can hold only a real number or an Alpha string. However, you can change the type of the REGS matrix to complex so that each storage register holds a complex number.

To make the storage registers complex:

1. Enter zero as a complex number: 0 ENTER COMPLEX.
2. Press STO + REGS to add the complex number (zero) to the REGS matrix.

Since the result of any arithmetic is complex if either operand is complex, this procedure makes the storage registers complex. The procedure will fail if any of the storage registers contain an Alpha string.

To make the storage registers real:

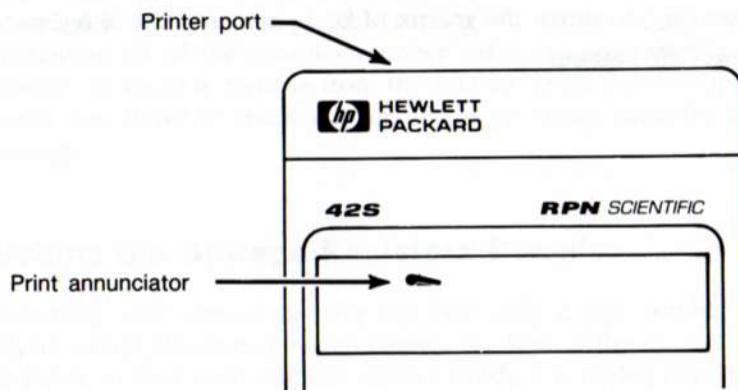
1. Press RCL REGS to recall a copy of the storage registers into the X-register.
2. Press COMPLEX to separate the complex matrix into two real matrices.
3. Press x_{xy} to move the matrix of real-parts into the X-register.
4. Press STO REGS.

* If the problem you're working requires a true (three dimensional) vector as a result, use a 1×3 matrix to represent each vector in three dimensions.

Printing

The HP-42S prints information using the HP 82240A Infrared Printer, which accepts the infrared signal generated by the calculator's printer port.

The print annunciator (◀) comes on whenever the calculator sends information through its printer port.



With a printer you can:

- Print intermediate and final results, including all types of data.
- Keep a running record of your keystrokes and calculations.
- List the names of programs and variables stored in the calculator.
- Print complete and partial program listings.
- Print a copy of the display.

Common Printing Operations

The first two rows of the PRINT menu contains these print functions:

PRINT	
PRΣ	<i>Print statistics.</i>
PRP	<i>Print program.</i>
PRV	<i>Print variable.</i>
PRST	<i>Print stack.</i>
PRA	<i>Print Alpha register.</i>
PRX	<i>Print X-register.</i>
▼	
PRUSR	<i>Print user (variables and programs).</i>
LIST	<i>List program lines.</i>
ADV	<i>Advance printer paper.</i>
PRLCD	<i>Print LCD (liquid crystal display).</i>
DELAY	<i>Delay time between lines.</i>

Here are a few common printing tasks:

To enable printing: Press **PRINT ▲ PON** (*printing on*). The PRON function sets flags 21 (printer enable) and 55 (printer existence).

The infrared printer port remains enabled until you disable it by pressing **PRINT ▲ POFF** (*printing off*). The PROFF function clears flags 21 and 55.

To print the contents of the X-register: Press **PRINT PRX**.

To print the contents of a variable:

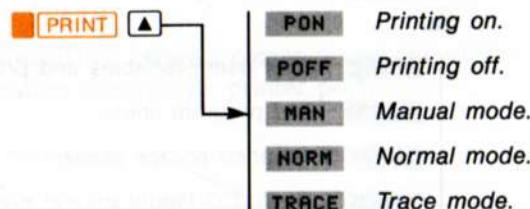
1. Press **PRINT PRV**.
2. Select the variable from the catalog, or type the variable name using the ALPHA menu.

For example, to print the contents of the storage registers (which are stored as a matrix named REGS), press **PRINT PRV REGS**.

To print the contents of the Alpha register: Press **PRINT PRA**.

Printing Modes

How and when information is sent to the printer depends on the current modes. The functions for controlling the printing modes are in the third row of the PRINT menu:



To select a printing mode:

1. Press **PRINT** **▲**.
2. Press one of the following:
 - **MAN** (*Manual mode*). Use this mode when you want the calculator to print only when a print function is executed. The VIEW and AVIEW functions can also generate printer output in this mode. (This is the default mode.)
 - **NORM** (*Normal mode*). Use this mode when you want to print a record of prompts and keystrokes.
 - **TRACE** (*Trace mode*). Use this mode when you want to print a record of prompts, keystrokes, and results. If a program is running, each instruction is printed as it executes. This mode is primarily intended for testing and debugging programs.

Flags That Affect Printing

There are several flags that affect how and when information is printed. For example, to cause all printing to be double-wide, set flag 12 (**FLAGS SF 12**). To return to normal-width printing, clear flag 12 (**FLAGS CF 12**).

Flag(s)	Purpose	Page(s)
12	Double-wide printing.	274
13	Lowercase printing.	274
15 and 16	Printing mode.	274
21 and 55	Printer enable and printer existence.	131 and 132

Printing Speed and Delay Time

Since the HP-42S is capable of sending information faster than it can be printed by the HP 82240A Infrared Printer, the calculator uses a *delay time* to avoid losing information. To optimize printing speed, set the delay time slightly greater than the time it takes for your printer to print a single line of information.

To set the printing delay time:

1. Key the delay time into the X-register (in seconds). The longest delay time you can set is 1.9 seconds.
2. Press **PRINT** **▼ DELAY**.

If you're operating the printer without an AC adapter, printing speed will slow down as the batteries discharge. If you are using the longest delay time (1.9 seconds) and your printer is still too slow, replace the batteries or connect an AC adapter. Operating the printer with batteries this low (without an AC adapter) will likely result in poor infrared communication and may damage the printer.

Low Calculator Batteries

To conserve battery power, the HP-42S will not transmit data to the printer when the  annunciator is on. If low battery power occurs after you've started printing, printing stops and the calculator displays **Batt Too Low To Print**. The calculator automatically returns to Manual mode.

Calculator Functions That Print

If printing is enabled (after executing PRON), the VIEW and AVIEW functions automatically generate printed output (in addition to performing their normal functions).

For more information on how these functions and flags 21 and 55 affect program execution, refer to chapter 9, "Program Input and Output."

Printing Graphics in the Display

The PRLCD ( ) function copies the display to the printer, pixel for pixel. The primary purpose for this function is to print graphics that you create in the display using the PIXEL and AGRAF functions (page 135).

The "PLOT" program on page 160 creates a plot in the display and then uses the PRLCD function to print it.

Printing Programs

To print an entire program:

1. Press   (*print program*).
2. Select the program from the catalog, or type the program name (global label) using the ALPHA menu.

The PRP function prints the entire program, even if the global label you specify is not the first line of the program.

If you do not specify any label (   ), the calculator prints the current program.

To print part of a program:

1. Position the program pointer to the line where you want to start the listing (page 111).
2. Press  .
3. Key in the number of lines you want to print, *nnnn*. (If you enter fewer than four digits, complete the instruction by pressing .)

The program listing begins with the current line and continues for *nnnn* lines or until an END instruction is encountered.

Character Sets

Some characters are not printed as you see them in the display. This is because the character set used in the HP-42S does not directly match the character set used in the HP 82240A Infrared Printer. Compare the character table in appendix E of this manual with the character set listed in the HP 82240A owner's manual.

calculator to have many options including numeric, logic and low-level calculation functions, will not be a problem, and you can learn how to use them quickly and effectively to help you solve problems. You will also learn how to use the built-in numeric solver to quickly find the roots of equations, and how to use the numeric integration function to calculate areas under curves.

Chapter 8, "Simple Programming," shows how to write programs in BASIC, which is the built-in programming language of the HP-41 calculator, and will teach you how to use it to perform calculations, control the flow of your programs, and even to interface with other calculators and computers. Chapter 9, "Program Input and Output," shows how to use the built-in I/O functions to read data from files, and write data to files, and how to use the built-in numeric solver to quickly find the roots of equations, and how to use the numeric integration function to calculate areas under curves.

also included

Two additional chapters are included to help you get the most out of your calculator. Chapter 10, "Programming Techniques," contains a collection of tips and tricks for writing better programs, including how to use loops and subroutines effectively, and how to use the built-in numeric solver to quickly find the roots of equations, and how to use the numeric integration function to calculate areas under curves.

Chapter 11, "Using HP-41 Programs," shows how to use the built-in numeric solver to quickly find the roots of equations, and how to use the numeric integration function to calculate areas under curves.

With all these features and more, the HP-41 is a powerful tool for solving complex problems, and you'll be able to use it effectively and efficiently to help you succeed in your studies.



Part 2

Programming

- Page 108 8: Simple Programming**
121 9: Program Input and Output
141 10: Programming Techniques
166 11: Using HP-41 Programs

The HP-41 calculator is a powerful tool for solving complex problems, and you'll be able to use it effectively and efficiently to help you succeed in your studies. With all these features and more, the HP-41 is a powerful tool for solving complex problems, and you'll be able to use it effectively and efficiently to help you succeed in your studies. With all these features and more, the HP-41 is a powerful tool for solving complex problems, and you'll be able to use it effectively and efficiently to help you succeed in your studies. With all these features and more, the HP-41 is a powerful tool for solving complex problems, and you'll be able to use it effectively and efficiently to help you succeed in your studies.

Chapter 8: Simple Programming

This chapter introduces you to the basics of programming on the HP-41 calculator. You'll learn how to write simple programs, and how to use them to solve problems. You'll also learn how to use the built-in numeric solver to quickly find the roots of equations, and how to use the numeric integration function to calculate areas under curves.

After you've learned the basics of programming, you'll be ready to move on to more advanced topics, such as subroutines and loops.

8

Simple Programming

Part 1 of this manual introduced you to several functions and operations that you can use *manually* (from the keyboard). In this chapter you will learn how *programs* can be used to store and execute a sequence of functions. More specifically, you will learn:

- How to key a program into memory.
- How to edit (change) a program.
- How to execute (run) a program.
- What happens when an error causes a program to stop.
- About the parts of a program.
- How to clear a program from memory.

The programming information in this manual (chapters 8, 9, and 10) should give you a good start at writing your own programs. If you're interested in more advanced programming information and techniques, refer to the *HP-42S Programming Examples and Techniques* manual (part number 00042-90020).

An Introduction to Keystroke Programming

The sequence of steps a program uses to perform a calculation are the same as the steps you would execute when solving the problem manually. By programming your calculator you can repeat operations or calculations without repeating the keystrokes every time.

For example, consider the formula for the area of a circle:

$$A = \pi r^2.$$

To calculate the area of a circle with a radius of 5, you would key in the radius, square it, and then multiply by π .

5

Y: 0.0000
X: 78.5398

The keystrokes can be stored as a program and then executed any number of times for circles of different radii. Such a program might look like this:

```
01 LBL "AREA"  
02 X↑2  
03 PI  
04 ×  
05 END
```

This program assumes that the radius is in the X-register when the program runs. To calculate an area, you would key in a radius and then run the program. The result (the area of the circle) is left in the X-register when the program ends.

The label (line 01) identifies the program so you can refer to it by name. The END instruction (line 05) separates this program from the next program in memory.

Example: Keying In and Running a Program. To key a program into the calculator, press to move to a new program space (page 118), and then press to select *Program-entry mode*.

00~~0~~ 0-Byte Prgm >
01 .END.

Key in the program listed above.

AREA

00< 8-Byte Prgm >
01▶LBL "AREA"

The next three lines are the *body* of the program—that is, the part that calculates the area of the circle. As you press the keys, the calculator records them and automatically numbers them as program steps.

01 LBL "AREA"

02 $\times \downarrow 2$

03 π

04 \times

The calculator has automatically provided an END statement for you, so the program is complete. If you want to review the program before exiting Program-entry mode, use \blacktriangleleft and \triangleright to move up and down through the lines of the program.

EXIT

Y: 0.0000
X: 78.5398

Now you can use the program to calculate the area of any circle given the radius, r . Key in a radius of 5 and run the program.

5 AREA

Y: 78.5398
X: 78.5398

The result is the same as when you solved the problem manually.

Find the area of a circle with a radius of 2.5.

2.5 AREA

Y: 78.5398
X: 19.6350

Divide the two results.

Y: 78.5398
X: 4.0000

The area of a circle with a radius of 5 is 4 times greater than the area of a circle with a radius of 2.5.

Program-Entry Mode

The key toggles the calculator in and out of Program-entry mode. In Program-entry mode, functions and numbers you key in are saved as program instructions.

The Program Pointer

While working the example above, you may have noticed the \blacktriangleright character in the display. This is the *program pointer*. It points to the *current program line*. If the current program line is too long for the display, press and hold the key to display the entire line.

Moving the Program Pointer

The following instructions are nonprogrammable, so you can execute them in or out of Program-entry mode to move the program pointer.

To move the program pointer to:

The next program line.

(or \blacktriangleleft if no menu is displayed)

The previous program line.

(or \triangleright if no menu is displayed)

Line number $nnnn$ of the current program.

\square $nnnn$

A global label.

\square label

A new program space.

\square \square

Inserting Program Lines

Instructions keyed into a program are inserted immediately *after* the current program line and the pointer advances to the new line. Therefore, to insert a program line between lines 04 and 05 of a program, you would move the pointer to line 04 and then key in the instruction.

Deleting Program Lines

To delete a program line, position the program pointer to the line you want to delete, and then press **◆**. When you delete a line, the program pointer moves to the previous line.

To delete several consecutive program lines, use the DEL (*delete*) function (page 120).

Executing Programs

In general, there are two ways to run programs:

- *Normal execution*. Program instructions continue to execute until an instruction that stops program execution is encountered (such as STOP, PROMPT, RTN, or END) or until you manually stop the program by pressing **R/S** or **EXIT**.
- *Stepwise execution*. Program instructions are executed one at a time as you *step* through the program with the **SST** key. This method of executing a program is especially useful when you are *debugging* a program (testing for errors).

Remember, Program-entry mode must be *off* to run a program.

Normal Execution

To execute a program using the program catalog:

1. Press **XEQ** or **CATALOG** **PGM**.
2. Press the menu key corresponding to the program you want to execute.

This method is used in the example on page 110.

To assign a program to the CUSTOM menu:

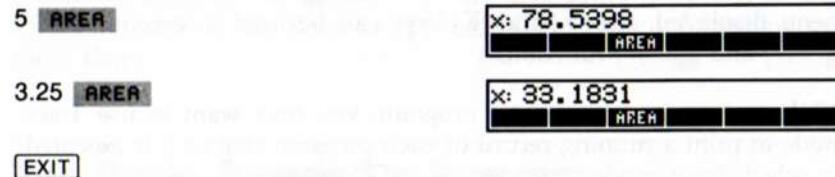
1. Press **ASSIGN** **PGM**.
2. Press the menu key corresponding to the program you want to assign.

3. The CUSTOM menu has three rows; use **▼** or **▲** to display the row you want and then press the menu key where you want the program assigned.

For example, assign the "AREA" program to the CUSTOM menu.



Now, each time you want to calculate the area of a circle, key in the radius and then press **AREM**.



Running a Program With **R/S**

To run the current program beginning with the current program line, press **R/S** (*run/stop*). If you hold the **R/S** key down, the calculator displays the current program line (**▶**); that is, the line to be executed next. If you hold **R/S** down until **NULL** appears, the program does not begin running when you release the key.

You can position the program pointer to the top of the current program by executing the RTN function when Program-entry mode is off. Therefore, to run the current program (beginning with the first line), press **PGM.FCN** **RTN** and then **R/S**.

Stopping a Program

To stop a running program press **R/S** or **EXIT**. Execution halts after the current instruction is completed. To resume execution, press **R/S** again.

Testing and Debugging a Program

The HP-42S allows you to execute any program one step at a time with the **SST** key. This feature is particularly useful when you are trying to find a *bug* (error) in a program or when you just want to see how each instruction in a program works. (Note that if there is no menu displayed, the **▼** and **▲** keys can be used to execute the **SST** and **BST** functions.)

While testing or debugging a program, you may want to use Trace mode to print a running record of each program step as it is executed. To select Trace mode, press **PRINT** **TRACE**.

To execute a program one step at a time:

1. Position the program pointer to the label or line number where you want to start executing the program. If you skip this step, execution will begin with the current program line.
2. Be sure Program-entry mode is *off*. If any data is needed at the start of the program, enter it.
3. Press and hold **SST** to display the current program line. When you release **SST**, the instruction is immediately executed and the program pointer advances.

If you hold the **SST** key down too long, **NULL** appears and the program instruction is *not* executed when you release the key.

When the program pointer reaches the end of the current program, it *wraps* around to the first line.

You can move the program pointer up (backwards) through a program with the **BST** key. The **BST** key:

- Moves the program pointer *without* executing program instructions.

- Repeats when you hold the key down.

Error Stops

If an error occurs while a program is running, program execution halts, and the appropriate error message is displayed. The error message disappears when you press a key.

The program pointer stops at the line that generated the error. To view the line, select Program-entry mode (**PRGM**).

A running program will ignore an error if flag 24 (*range ignore*) or flag 25 (*error ignore*) is set. Refer to appendix C for more information on these flags.

The Basic Parts of a Program

Program Lines and Program Memory

As you've already seen, when the HP-42S is in Program-entry mode, keystrokes you enter are not immediately executed, but are stored in program memory as instructions. Each instruction occupies a single program line, which is automatically numbered.

Types of Program Lines. Program lines are divided into several categories. A program line may contain:

- A program label (such as **LBL "AREA"**).
- A complete instruction (such as a simple numeric function, like **[+]**, or an instruction that includes a parameter, like **STO 14**).
- A complete number (called a *numeric constant*).
- An Alpha string of up to 15 characters (called an *Alpha constant*).

Memory Requirements. Program steps may vary in size from 1 to 16 bytes. At the top of each program (line 00) the calculator displays the size of the current program in bytes.

If you run out of memory while trying to enter a program line, the calculator displays **Insufficient Memory**. Refer to appendix B, "Managing Calculator Memory."

Program Labels

A label is an identifier placed at the beginning of a series of program steps. Program labels may be used anywhere in a program. Generally, a program starts with a *global label*. Within a program, individual routines can be identified with *local labels*.

Global Labels. Global labels use Alpha characters and are distinguished by quotation marks around the label name.* For example, the program at the beginning of this chapter has a global label:

```
01 LBL "AREA"
```

Global labels may be one to seven characters long. The single-letter names **A** through **J** and **a** through **e** are reserved for local Alpha labels (which are displayed *without* quotation marks).

Global labels:

- Can be accessed no matter where the program pointer is located.
- Are listed in the program catalog (**CATALOG** **PGM**).
- Can be assigned to the CUSTOM menu.
- Should be unique within calculator memory to avoid confusing one program with another.

Local Labels. There are two types of local labels: *numeric* and *Alpha*.

- Numeric labels are identified by two digits, **LBL 00** through **LBL 99**. (**LBL 00** through **LBL 14** are called *short form* local labels because they use less memory.)
- Local Alpha labels use single Alpha characters, **LBL A** through **LBL J** and **LBL a** through **LBL e**.

* To key in a global label that begins with a digit character, select an ALPHA submenu and then type the digit. This forces the digit to become an Alpha character. For example, to key in **LBL "1"**, press **LBL ABCDE 1** **ENTER**. Without **ABCDEF**, the label is interpreted as **LBL 01**.

Local labels are used to mark and provide access to various segments of a program. The primary purpose for local labels is to facilitate program *branching*. Refer to "Branching" in chapter 10.

Local labels can be:

- Accessed only within the current program.
- Duplicated in separate programs. That is, local labels do not need to be unique within calculator memory, but they should be unique within each program. (It is possible to use duplicate local labels within a single program if you consider the search patterns used to find local labels. Refer to page 148.)

The Body of a Program

The body of a program is where all the work is done. For example, the body of the "AREA" program is:

```
02 X†2  
03 PI  
04 ×
```

This program contains two functions (**X†2** and **×**) and a numeric constant (**PI**).

Constants

Numeric Constants. A numeric constant is simply a number in a program. When the line is executed the number is placed in the X-register, lifting the stack just as if you keyed the number in from the keyboard.

The PI function (**π**) operates like a numeric constant. Thus, the "AREA" program would return exactly the same result if line 03 looked like this:*

```
03 3.14159265359
```

* Although the program would run the same, keying in the 12-digit approximation for **π** takes 14 bytes of program memory; the PI function requires only 1 byte.

Consecutive Numeric Constants. Because numeric constants in programs are on different program lines, [ENTER] is not needed to separate them. Consider these two programs:

```
01 12          01 12
02 ENTER      02 17
03 17          03 × 17
```

Both programs produce the same result (12×17), however the one on the right is one line shorter and saves one byte of program memory. To key in the program lines on the right, press 12 [ENTER] \blacktriangleleft 17 [X].

Program ENDS

Programs are separated from one another with END instructions. The last program in memory uses the *permanent* END, which appears in the display as .END..

After the first program in memory, you should insert an END between subsequent programs so they will be considered as separate programs, and not just labeled routines within the same program. There are two ways to enter an END at the end of a program:

- Press \blacksquare [GTO] \blacksquare \blacksquare . This procedure automatically inserts an END after the last program in memory and positions the program pointer to the new program space at the bottom of program memory. This space contains the *null* program:

```
00 < 0-Byte Prgm >
01 .END.
```

- Or, manually execute the END function (press [XEQ] [ENTER] END [ENTER] or use the function catalog).

Because END instructions separate programs, deleting an END causes the two programs to be joined as one program. You cannot delete the permanent .END..

LBL "PAM"
END
LBL "BRUCE"
END
LBL "CHRIS"
END
LBL "BOB"
END
LBL "DEX"
END.

Clearing Programs

To clear an entire program from memory:

1. Press \blacksquare [CLEAR] CLP .
2. Specify the program you want to clear using *one* of the following:
 - Press the menu key corresponding to a global label in the program.
 - Use the ALPHA menu to type a global label ([ENTER] label [ENTER]).
 - Or, press [ENTER] [ENTER] to clear the *current program*.

To clear a portion of a program:

1. Press **[PRGM]** to select Program-entry mode (if the calculator is not already in Program-entry mode).
2. Position the program pointer to the first line in the range of lines you want to delete.
3. Press **[CLEAR] [▼] [DEL]** (delete).
4. Key in the number of lines you want to delete.

For example, to delete lines 14 through 22 of the current program, you would press: **[PRGM]** (to select Program-entry mode), **[GTO] [14] [ENTER]** (to position the program pointer to line 14), **[CLEAR] [▼] [DEL] [9] [ENTER]** (to delete 9 program lines).

The DEL function deletes program lines only if the calculator is in Program-entry mode.

Program Input and Output

An *interactive* program has two general characteristics:

- *Input*. The program prompts you to key in information or make a selection.
- *Output*. The program presents results in a meaningful format using the display or a printer.

This chapter covers functions and techniques for making programs easier to use. You'll learn about:

- Prompting for values and using variable menus.
- Displaying labeled output and messages.
- Printing during program execution.
- Working with Alpha data.
- Displaying graphics.

Using the INPUT Function

Using the INPUT function is one of the simplest ways for a program to prompt for data to be stored into a variable or register. When an INPUT instruction is executed:

- The current value of the variable or register is recalled into the X-register. If you use a new variable name, the INPUT function automatically creates the variable and assigns an initial value of zero.
- The normal label for the X-register ($x:$) is replaced with the name of the variable or register being input and a question mark.

- Program execution halts, allowing you to key in or calculate a value.

When you press **R/S**, the value in the X-register is automatically stored into the variable or register and program execution continues.

Pressing **EXIT** (if there is no menu displayed) cancels the INPUT function without storing any data. If you then press **R/S**, the INPUT is resumed with the original value.

Example: Using INPUT. The formula for the surface area of a box is

$$\text{Area} = 2 ((\text{length} \times \text{height}) + (\text{length} \times \text{width}) + (\text{height} \times \text{width})).$$

The following program uses INPUT to prompt for the values of *L*, *H*, and *W* and then calculates the surface area.

01 LBL "SAREA"	Inputs each of the three variables.
02 INPUT "L"	
03 INPUT "H"	
04 INPUT "W"	
05 RCL \times "L"	Calculates <i>length</i> \times <i>width</i> . The value of <i>W</i> is already in the X-register because it was the last value input.
06 LASTX	Calculates <i>height</i> \times <i>width</i>
07 RCL \times "H"	Calculates <i>length</i> \times <i>height</i>
08 RCL "H"	
09 RCL \times "L"	Calculates sum of the products, multiplies by 2, and leaves the result in the X-register.
10 +	
11 +	
12 2	
13 \times	
14 END	

Key the program into your calculator.

GTO	PRGM
00►LBL "SAREA"	01 .END.
INPUT L	02►INPUT "L"
INPUT H	03►INPUT "H"
INPUT W	04►INPUT "W"
RCL \times L	05►RCL \times "L"
LASTX	06►LASTX
RCL \times H	07►RCL \times "H"
RCL H	08►RCL "H"
RCL \times L	09►RCL \times "L"
+	10►+
+	11►+
2 \times	12 2
EXIT	13►

Run the program to calculate the surface area of a box that is $4 \times 3 \times 1.5$ meters.

XEQ SAREA

**Y: 0.0000
L?0.0000**

The program is prompting for a value of L. Key in the length (4) and press **R/S**.

4 R/S

**Y: 4.0000
H?0.0000**

Key in the height (3) and press **R/S**.

3 R/S

**Y: 3.0000
W?0.0000**

Key in the width (1.5) and press **R/S**.

1.5 R/S

**Y: 0.0000
X: 45.0000**

The surface area is 45 square meters.

What is the surface area of a box that is twice as long? Run the program again. This time multiply the length by 2 and leave the other values as they are.

XEQ SAREA

**Y: 45.0000
L?4.0000**

2 x R/S

**Y: 8.0000
H?3.0000**

R/S

**Y: 3.0000
W?1.5000**

R/S

**Y: 3.0000
X: 81.0000**

The surface area is 81 square meters.

Using a Variable Menu

Using a *variable menu* may be the most efficient way for a program to input values for several variables. The VARMENU (*variable menu*) function creates a menu containing variable names. When the program stops, the menu is displayed allowing you to store, recall, and view variables.

The VARMENU function requires a global program label as a parameter. When a program executes VARMENU, the calculator searches for the specified program label. It then builds the variable menu using the MVAR (*menu variable*) instructions immediately following the specified label. (The calculator ignores MVAR instructions except when they are being read by the VARMENU function.*)

To store a value into a menu variable:

1. Key in or calculate the value.
2. Press the corresponding menu key.

To recall the value of a menu variable:

1. Press **RCL**.
2. Press the corresponding menu key.

To view a menu variable without recalling it:

1. Press **■** (shift).
2. Press and hold the corresponding menu key. The message disappears when you release the key.

* The Solver and Integration applications also use variable menus defined with MVAR instructions.

To continue program execution:

- Press a menu key.
- Or, press [R/S].

If you continue by pressing a menu key, the name of the corresponding variable is stored into the Alpha register. Your program can use this information to determine which key was pressed. If you continue by pressing [R/S], the Alpha register is not altered.

To exit from a variable menu:

- Press [EXIT].
- Or, select an application menu ([SOLVER], [f(x)], [MATRIX], [STAT], or [BASE]).

Example: Using a Variable Menu. In the previous program, the INPUT function was used to prompt for three variables. By replacing lines 02, 03, and 04 with the following seven program lines, you can add a variable menu to the program.

02 MVAR "L"	Declares the menu variables following the global label.
03 MVAR "H"	
04 MVAR "W"	
05 VARMENU "SAREA"	Creates the variable menu and stops the program. When the program is restarted, the variable menu is exited.
06 STOP	
07 EXITALL	
08 RCL "W"	Since the variables in a variable menu can be entered in any order, there is no guarantee that W will be in the X-register (as there was in the first program).

Edit the "SAREA" program. First delete lines 02, 03, and 04.

[PRGM] [GTO] [4] [ENTER]



```
03 INPUT "H"  
04 INPUT "W"  
  
01LBL "SAREA"  
02 RCLx "L"
```

Now insert the new program lines.

```
PGM.FCN PGM.FCN ▲ MVAR  
L  
MVAR H  
MVAR W  
VARM SAREA  
EXIT R/S  
  
CATALOG FCN  
  
02 MVAR "L"  
MVAR VARM GETK MENU KEYG KEYS  
03 MVAR "H"  
MVAR VARM GETK MENU KEYG KEYS  
04 MVAR "W"  
MVAR VARM GETK MENU KEYG KEYS  
05 VARMENU "SAREA"  
MVAR VARM GETK MENU KEYG KEYS  
06 STOP  
RCS ACOS ACOSH ADV AGRA API  
06 STOP  
07 EXITALL  
08 RCL "W"
```

Use the arrow keys to find the EXITALL function in the catalog.

▼ ... ▼ EXITA

06 STOP
07 EXITALL

RCL W

07 EXITALL
08 RCL "W"

EXIT

Now run the new version of the program.

[XEQ] SAREA

x: 81.0000
L H W

The variable menu is displayed, ready to use. Calculate the surface area of a box that is $5.5 \times 2 \times 3.75$ cm.

5.5 L

L=5.5000
L H W

2 **W**3.75 **H****R/S**W=2.0000
L H WH=3.7500
L H WY: 3.7500
X: 78.2500The surface area is 78.25 cm².

Displaying Labeled Results (VIEW)

To display the contents of a variable or register use the VIEW function. VIEW creates a message that includes the variable or register name, an equal sign, and the data stored there. (Also refer to "Printing With VIEW and AVIEW" on page 132.)

For example, add these two lines to the end of the "SAREA" program.

```
18 STO "SAREA"
19 VIEW "SAREA"
```

Line 18 stores the result into a variable named SAREA. Line 19 displays the contents of SAREA.

0 **STO** **ENTER** SAREA **ENTER**

Y: 78.2500
X: 0.0000

PRGM **GTO** 17 **ENTER**

16 2
17 X

STO SAREA

17 X
18 STO "SAREA"

PGM FCN **VIEW** SAREA

18 STO "SAREA"
19 VIEW "SAREA"**EXIT**Y: 78.2500
X: 0.0000

Now, run the program again using dimensions of 2 × 3 × 4 m.

XEQ **SAREA**X: 0.0000
L H W2 **L** 3 **H** 4 **W** **R/S**SAREA=52.0000
X: 52.0000

This time the answer is labeled for you. This technique is particularly useful when a program has several results.

Displaying Messages (AVIEW and PROMPT)

Messages are useful in programs to display descriptive prompts, output, and error conditions. For a program to display a message, it must:

1. Create the message in the Alpha register with an Alpha string.
2. Display the contents of the Alpha register.

To create a two line display, insert the *line feed character* (**PUNC** ▼) into the Alpha register as part of your message. When you execute AVIEW or PROMPT, characters following the line feed character are displayed on the second line of the display.

You can use more than one line feed character to produce multiline messages on the printer. However, since the calculator has a two-line display, anything following the second line feed character (within the same message) cannot be displayed.

The AVIEW Function. The AVIEW function displays the contents of the Alpha register. Depending on the status of flags 21 and 55, AVIEW may halt program execution or produce printer output. Refer to "Printing With VIEW and AVIEW" on page 132.

The PROMPT Function. The PROMPT function displays the contents of the Alpha register just as AVIEW does. However, PROMPT always halts program execution and only generates printer output in Normal and Trace printing modes.

Entering Alpha Strings Into Programs

An Alpha string entered as a program line—called an *Alpha constant*—is placed into the Alpha register when that line is executed. For a normal Alpha constant, like the one that follows, the Alpha string replaces the previous contents of the Alpha register.

```
01 "This is an"
```

If the *append symbol* precedes an Alpha string, the calculator appends the string to the current contents of the Alpha register.*

```
02 † " Alpha String"
```

Append symbol

After executing these two program lines, the Alpha register contains:

```
This is an Alpha String
```

The “SMILE” program on page 139 uses program lines like this to create a special string in the Alpha register.

To key an Alpha string into a program:

1. Press **■ ALPHA** to display the ALPHA menu.
2. Optional: press **ENTER** to insert the append symbol (**†**).
3. Type the string.
4. Press **ENTER** or **■ ALPHA** to complete the string.

An Alpha string in a program may be up to 15 characters long. (The append symbol counts as a character.)

If the Alpha register fills up (44 characters), appending more characters pushes the left-most (oldest) characters out of the Alpha register.

* Note that some printers may not be able to print the append character.

This program displays three consecutive messages:

```
01 "Hello there,"  
02 AVIEW  
03 PSE  
04 "this program"  
05 AVIEW  
06 PSE  
07 "has 3 messages."  
08 AVIEW  
09 END
```

Without the PSE instructions (lines 03 and 06) the program would run too fast to see the first two messages. A PSE is not needed after the last AVIEW because the viewed information remains in the display after the program stops. Pressing a key during a PSE causes program execution to halt. Press **R/S** to resume program execution.

Printing During Program Execution

Printing is another important form of program output. For a complete description of print functions and modes, read chapter 7, “Printing.”

Using Print Functions in Programs

When a print function (such as PRX, PRA, or PRV) is encountered in a running program, the calculator tests flags 21 and 55. In general, flag 21 (*printer enabled*) determines if printing is *desired* and flag 55 (*printer existence*) determines if printing is *possible*.

Flag 21	Flag 55	Result of Print Function
Clear	Set or clear	The print function is ignored and program execution continues with the next line.
Set	Clear	Program execution halts and displays Printing Is Disabled .
Set	Set	The print function is executed and the program continues.

Printing With VIEW and AVIEW

Like print functions, VIEW and AVIEW also test flags 21 and 55. In addition to performing their normal display functions, VIEW and AVIEW produce printed output if flags 21 and 55 are set.

To record results, set flag 21. If a program uses VIEW or AVIEW to display important results, set flag 21. Then if printing is enabled (flag 55 set), the information is printed.

If printing is disabled (flag 55 clear), the program stops so you can write down the displayed information. Press [R/S] to continue.

To display, but not record messages, clear flag 21. If flag 21 is clear, flag 55 is ignored by VIEW and AVIEW. The information is displayed and program execution continues.

Working With Alpha Data

This section describes the functions for manipulating data in the Alpha register. All of the techniques presented here can be executed manually; however, they are primarily meant for programming.

Moving Data Into and Out of the Alpha Register

In addition to keying data directly into the Alpha register or entering strings in programs, there are several ways to move data into and out of the Alpha register.

Storing Alpha Data. The ASTO (*Alpha store*) function copies the first six characters in the Alpha register into the specified variable or register. To execute the ASTO function:

1. If Alpha mode is not on, press [ALPHA].
2. Press [ASTO]. (The [STO] key executes ASTO when Alpha mode is on.)

3. Specify where you want the string to be stored:

- *In a storage register.* Key in the register number.
- *In a variable.* Press a menu key to select the variable or use the ALPHA menu to type the name.
- *In a stack register.* Press followed by **ST L**, **ST X**, **ST Y**, **ST Z**, or **ST T**.

For example, to copy the first six characters of the Alpha register into the X-register, press [ALPHA] [ASTO] [ST X].

Recalling Data Into the Alpha Register. The ARCL (*Alpha recall*) function recalls data into the Alpha register, appending it to the current contents. To execute the ARCL function:

1. If Alpha mode is not on, press [ALPHA].
2. Press [ARCL]. (The [RCL] key executes ARCL when Alpha mode is on.)
3. Specify the storage register, variable, or stack register you want to recall. (Refer to step 3 above.)

If you recall a number into the Alpha register, it is converted to Alpha characters and formatted using the current display format. Recalling a matrix into the Alpha register recalls its descriptor (such as **[2x3 Matrix]**).

When the Alpha register fills up, characters at the left end of the register (the “oldest” characters) are lost to make room for the new data.

To recall an integer into the Alpha register:

1. Place the number in the X-register.
2. Press **RIP** (*Alpha append integer part*). The RIP function appends the integer part of the number in the X-register to the current contents of the Alpha register.

You can produce a similar result by using FIX 0 display format, clearing flag 29 (to remove the decimal point), and recalling a number using ARCL. A number recalled this way, however, may be rounded if the fractional part of the number is greater than or equal to 0.5.

To translate a number into a character:

1. Key in the character code (the allowed range is 0 through 255). Appendix E lists all of the display characters and their character codes.
2. Press **PGM.FCN** **XTOA** (X to Alpha).

If the X-register contains an Alpha string, the entire string is appended to the Alpha register.

If the X-register contains a matrix, the XTOA function uses each element in the matrix as a character code or Alpha string. XTOA begins with the first element (1:1) and continues rowwise (to the right) until it reaches the end of the matrix. If the Alpha register fills up, only the last 44 characters to be appended will remain.

The XTOA function is especially useful for building a graphics string in the Alpha register. Refer to the program on page 139.

To translate a character into its character code: Execute the ATOX (Alpha to X) function. ATOX converts the left-most character in the Alpha register into its character code (0 through 255) and returns the number to the X-register. The character is deleted from the Alpha register, shifting the rest of the string left one position. If the Alpha register is empty, ATOX returns zero.

For example, if the Alpha register contains **Jane t**, executing ATOX deletes the **J** and returns its character code (74) to the X-register.

Searching the Alpha Register

To search the Alpha register for a character or string, use the POSA (*position in Alpha*) function. POSA searches the Alpha register for the *target* in the X-register. If a match is found, POSA returns the position number where the target was found (counting the left-most character as position 0). If a match is not found, POSA returns -1.

The target may be a character code or an Alpha string. POSA saves a copy of the target in the LAST X register.

Manipulating Alpha Strings

Once a string is in the Alpha register, there are several functions you can use to manipulate the data.

Finding the Length of an Alpha String. The ALENG (*Alpha length*) function returns to the X-register the number of characters in the Alpha register.

Shifting the Alpha Register. The ASHF (*Alpha shift*) function deletes the six left-most characters in the Alpha register. You may want to shift characters out of the Alpha register after using the ASTO function.

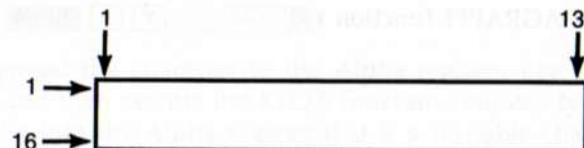
Rotating the Alpha Register. The AROT (*Alpha rotate*) function rotates the contents of the Alpha register by *n* characters (*n* is specified in the X-register). If *n* is positive, the rotation is to the left. If *n* is negative, the rotation is to the right.

Graphics

Using the functions PIXEL and AGRAPH (*Alpha graphics*), you can create graphics in the display of the HP-42S. The "DPLOT" and "PLOT" programs in the next chapter use the PIXEL function to produce graphs of functions (pages 156 and 160).

Turning On a Pixel in the Display

The PIXEL function turns on a pixel (one dot in the display) using the numbers in the X- and Y-registers. The *x*-value specifies the column (numbered from left to right; 1 through 131), and the *y*-value specifies the row (numbered from top to bottom; 1 through 16).



For a program to turn on a pixel in the display, it should:

1. Put the row number in the Y-register and the column number in the X-register.
2. Execute the PIXEL function (**PIXEL**).

Executing PIXEL turns on the specified pixel and sets the message flags (flags 50 and 51). This allows subsequent PIXEL and AGRAPH instructions to add to the existing display.

To start with a clear display, execute CLLCD (*clear liquid crystal display*) before turning pixels on.

Drawing Lines in the Display

The PIXEL function can also be used to draw vertical and horizontal lines across the display. To draw a vertical line, use a negative *x*-value (−1 through −131). To draw a horizontal line, use a negative *y*-value (−1 through −16). If both numbers are negative, then PIXEL draws two lines—one vertical and one horizontal.

The plotting programs at the end of the next chapter use this feature of PIXEL to draw an *x*-axis.

Building a Graphics Image Using the Alpha Register

To create a graphics image in the display, a program should:

1. Create a string of characters in the Alpha register with each character specifying a column of eight pixels.
2. Specify where in the display the upper-left corner of the image should begin. Put that pixel-row number in the Y-register and the pixel-column number in the X-register.
3. Execute the AGRAPH function (**AGRA**).

The status of flags 34 and 35 determine how the graphics image is displayed:

Flag 34	Flag 35	How the AGRAPH Image is Displayed
Clear*	Clear*	The image is merged with the existing display (logical OR).
Clear	Set	The image overwrites all pixels in that portion of the display.
Set	Clear	Duplicate "on" pixels get turned "off."
Set	Set	All pixels are reversed (logical XOR).

* Default setting.

Creating an Alpha String for AGRAPH. The AGRAPH function uses the character code of each character in the Alpha register as an eight-bit pattern for a column of pixels.

Each pixel in a column has a special value. Adding the values for all the pixels you want to display in a single column gives you the character code needed to produce that column.

Value	Dots to Print	Print Entry
1		1
2		2
4		
8		
16		
32		32
64		64
128		

99 ← Column Print Number

To append the character to the Alpha register, key in the character code and then execute the XTOA function. You can type the character directly into the Alpha register if it is a typeable character. (Refer to the character table in appendix E.) For example, the character code 99 (calculated above) is the code for "c".

Example: Using Binary Mode to Calculate a Column Value. You can use the built-in Base application* to convert a column pattern into a character code. For example, select the Base application and Binary mode.

BASE BINM

x: 110100
A..F HEXM DECM OCTM BIN LOGIC

Key in the column pattern above as a binary number. Start at the bottom, keying in a 0 for "off" pixels and a 1 for "on" pixels. (You can omit the leading zero if you want.)

01100011

x: 01100011
A..F HEXM DECM OCTM BIN LOGIC

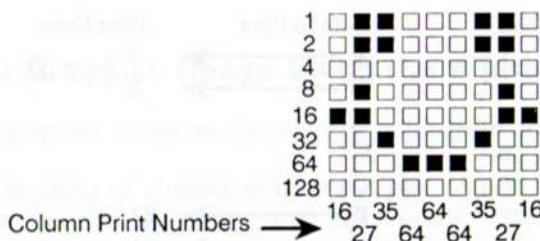
Display this number in Decimal mode.

DECIM

x: 99.0000
A..F HEXM DEC DECM OCTM BINM LOGIC

You don't have to use Decimal mode to use this number. While still in Binary mode, you could append the character to the Alpha register using the XTOA function.

Example: Displaying a Happy Face. The program below creates this happy face in the display.



Use the character table in appendix E to look up these character codes. If the table does not have keystrokes for a particular character (in this case character number 27), then append it to the Alpha register with the XTOA function. Refer to lines 03, 04, and 06 in the following program.

* Refer to chapter 16 for more information on the Base application.

01 LBL "SMILE"

02 "←"

03 27

04 XTOA

05 ← "#@@@#"

06 XTOA

07 ← "←"

08 5

09 62

10 CLLCD

11 AGRAPH

12 END

Character number 16.

Character number 27.

Character numbers 35, 64, 64, 64, and 35.

Character 27 (X-register still contains 27).

Character number 16.

Specifies the location of the image: row 5, column 62. (To key in the two numbers press 5 **ENTER** 62.)

Displays the image and stops.

Key in the "SMILE" program. (If you are still in the Base application from the previous example, press **EXIT**.)

GTO LBL PRGM

00~~0~~ 0-Byte Prgm 3
01 .END.

PGM.FCN LBL SMILE **ENTER**

00 { 9-Byte Prgm 3
01LBL "SMILE"

ALPHA ← **ENTER***

01 LBL "SMILE"
02 "←"

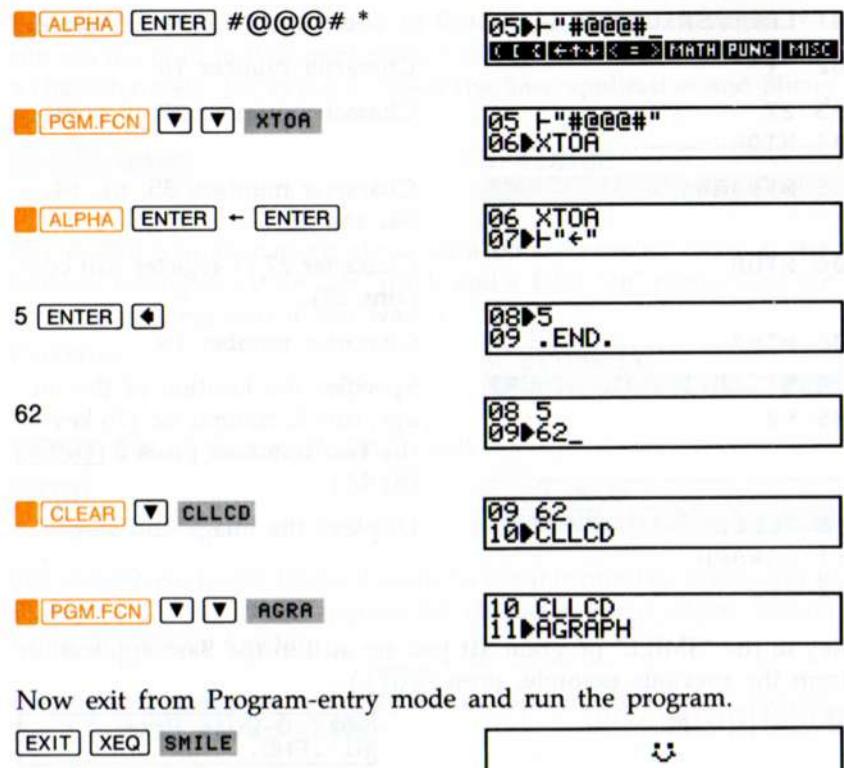
27

02 "←"
03 27

PGM.FCN XTOA

03 27
04XTOA

* After displaying the ALPHA menu ()**ALPHA**), the keystrokes to type ← are: **▼ ↻ ↻ ↻**.


ALPHA **ENTER** #@@@# *

PGM.FCN ▼ ▼ **XTOA**

ALPHA **ENTER** ← **ENTER**

5 **ENTER** ◀

62

CLEAR ▼ **CLLCD**

PGM.FCN ▼ ▼ **ACRA**

05► "#@@@#_

06► XTOA

06 XTOA

07► "◀"

08► 5

09 .END.

08 5

09► 62_

09 62

10► CLLCD

10 CLLCD

11► AGRAPH

Now exit from Program-entry mode and run the program.

EXIT **XEQ** **SMILE**



* After displaying the ALPHA menu and the append character (**ALPHA** **ENTER**), the key-strokes to type #@@@# are: ▼ MISC * MISC ▼ * MISC *.

Programming Techniques

This chapter covers functions and techniques for writing more sophisticated programs. You'll learn how to use:

- GTO (*go to*) and XEQ (*execute*) instructions to cause program branching to execute subroutines and other programs.
- The programmable menu to create *menu-driven* programs.
- Conditional tests and counters to create program *loops* (routines that repeat themselves).
- Tests and comparisons to make decisions and cause program branching.

Branching

Branching occurs whenever the program pointer moves to a line other than the "next" line—that is, whenever program instructions are not executed sequentially. The two primary functions for branching are GTO and XEQ.

Often flag tests and comparisons are followed by branching instructions that are executed according to the result of the test or comparison.

Branching to a Label (GTO)

Labels can be considered *destinations* for branching instructions. As explained in chapter 8, global labels can be accessed from anywhere in memory and local labels can be accessed only from within their own program.

There are three programmable forms of GTO instructions:

- GTO *nn* for branching to a local numeric label (where *nn* is the label number).
- GTO *label* for branching to a local Alpha label (where *label* is a single letter A through J or a through e).
- GTO "label" for branching to a global label (where *label* is the Alpha label).

Here are a few examples:

Example Instruction:	Description (Keys):
GTO 03	Branches to LBL 03 (GTO 03).
GTO A	Branches to LBL A (GTO ENTER A ENTER).
GTO "AREA"	Branches to LBL "AREA" (GTO AREA).

Executing GTO in a Program. In a running program, a GTO instruction causes program execution to branch to the specified label and continue running at that line.

Executing GTO From the Keyboard. Executing a GTO instruction from the keyboard moves the program pointer to the corresponding label. No program lines are executed.

Indirect Addressing With GTO. The following examples show how indirect addressing can be used with GTO instructions. That is, the label to be branched to is specified in a variable or register.

**Example
Instruction:**

GTO IND 12

Description (Keys):

Branches to the label specified in storage register R₁₂ (GTO IND 12). For example, if R₁₂ contains the string "AREA", then program execution branches to LBL "AREA".

GTO IND "ABC"

Branches to the label specified in the variable ABC (GTO IND ABC). For example, if ABC contains the number 17, then program execution branches to LBL 17.

GTO IND ST X

Branches to the label specified in the X-register (GTO IND ST X). For example, if the X-register contains the number 96, then program execution branches to LBL 96.

Calling Subroutines (XEQ and RTN)

The GTO function, described above, is used to make a simple program branch. XEQ is used in much the same way with one important difference: after an XEQ instruction has transferred execution to the specified label, the next RTN (*return*) or END instruction causes the program to branch back to the instruction that immediately follows the XEQ instruction.

XEQ instructions are *subroutine calls*. A subroutine call is not complete until a RTN or END has been executed to return program execution to the line following the XEQ instruction.

XEQ is also used to run programs from the keyboard (XEQ).

Example: GTO versus XEQ. Consider the following two programs. If you execute the first program (XEQ PRG1), TONE 0 never executes because the GTO instruction branches to the second program. Program execution halts when the END is reached in the second program.

```
01 LBL "PRG1"
02 GTO "PRG2"
03 TONE 0
04 END
```

```
01 LBL "PRG2"
02 TONE 9
03 END
```

However, if you replace line 02 of the first program with an XEQ instruction (`XEQ "PRG2"`), both TONES will sound. When the END is encountered in the second program, execution returns to the line immediately following the XEQ. Program execution halts at the END in the first program.

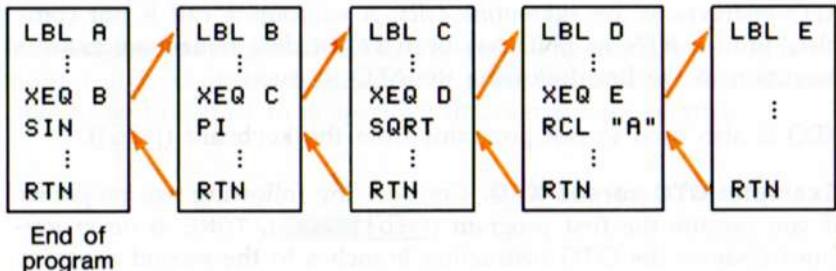
```
01 LBL "PRG1"
02 XEQ "PRG2"
03 TONE 0
04 END
```

```
01 LBL "PRG2"
02 TONE 9
03 END
```

Subroutine Return Locations. When an XEQ instruction calls a subroutine, the HP-42S remembers the location of that XEQ instruction so that execution can return there when the subroutine is completed.

For example, this illustration shows how the calculator *nests* subroutines by remembering return locations. The HP-42S can remember up to eight pending return locations.

Main program
(top level)



Loss of Subroutine Returns. Pending return locations are lost under the following conditions:

- If there are already eight pending return locations when another subroutine or program is called with an XEQ, the first (oldest) return location is lost.* In this case, program execution never returns to the first XEQ that called a subroutine. Instead, execution halts when the first subroutine is finally completed because there are no further return locations.
- All pending return locations are lost when you execute any program from the keyboard or perform any other operation (while program execution is halted) that alters the program pointer. Pressing **SST** or **R/S** does not cause return locations to be lost.

The Programmable Menu

The HP-42S has a programmable menu which is used to cause program branching. The MENU function selects the programmable menu. The menu is displayed when the program stops. You can define each key in the menu so that when the key is pressed, a particular GTO or XEQ instruction executes. You can even define **▲**, **▼**, and **EXIT**.

To define a menu key:

- Enter a string into the Alpha register. This is the text that appears in the menu label above the key. (The Alpha register is not used when defining **▲**, **▼**, or **EXIT**.)
- Execute KEYG (on key, go to) or KEYX (on key, execute). (These functions are in the last row of the PGM.FCN menu; press **PROMPT** **PGM.FCN** **▲**.)
- Specify which key you want to define:
 - Press **Σ+**, **1/x**, **√x**, **LOG**, **LN**, **XEQ**, **▲**, **▼**, or **EXIT**.
 - Or, key in the key number, 1 through 9.

* The Solver and Integration applications also create return locations. If the calculator loses one of these returns, program execution stops and an error message is displayed.

4. Specify a program label using *one* of these methods:

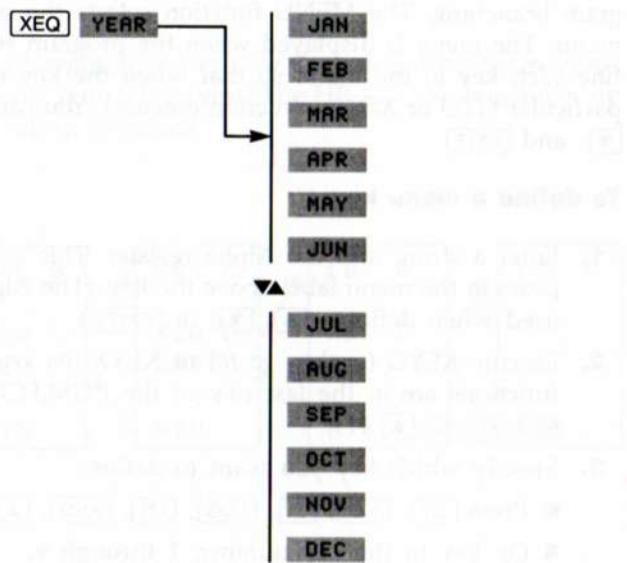
- Select an existing global label by pressing the corresponding menu key.
- Use the ALPHA menu to type an Alpha label (local or global):
[ENTER] *label* [ENTER].
- Key in a two-digit numeric label.

Repeat this procedure for each menu key you want to define. Defining a key replaces any previous definition that may exist for that key.

To display the programmable menu: Execute the MENU function (press [PGM.FCN] [▲ MENU]).

To clear all programmable menu key definitions: Execute the CLMENU (*clear menu*) function (press [CLEAR] [▼ CLMN]).

Example. The program segment listed below shows how the programmable menu can be used to emulate this menu:



```
01 LBL "YEAR"
02 LBL A
03 "JAN"
04 KEY 1 XEQ 01
05 "FEB"
06 KEY 2 XEQ 02
07 "MAR"
08 KEY 3 XEQ 03
09 "APR"
10 KEY 4 XEQ 04
11 "MAY"
12 KEY 5 XEQ 05
13 "JUN"
14 KEY 6 XEQ 06
15 KEY 7 GTO B
16 KEY 8 GTO B
17 KEY 9 GTO 99
```



```
18 MENU
19 LBL 20
20 STOP
21 GTO 20
```



```
22 LBL B
23 "JUL"
24 KEY 1 XEQ 07
25 "AUG"
26 KEY 2 XEQ 08
27 "SEP"
28 KEY 3 XEQ 09
29 "OCT"
30 KEY 4 XEQ 10
31 "NOV"
32 KEY 5 XEQ 11
33 "DEC"
34 KEY 6 XEQ 12
```

Defines the first row of the "YEAR" menu. A different subroutine is executed for each month. The routines for the first six months are labeled with local labels 01 through 06.

Defines the [▲], [▼], and [EXIT] keys. The [▲] and [▼] keys are defined to go to the same program label (LBL B) because this is a two-row menu; either key should display the second row. The [EXIT] key is defined to cause a branch to a routine that exits the menu.

The programmable menu is selected and the program stops. Because of this little loop, pressing [R/S] keeps the program at line 20.

Defines the menu keys for the second row of the "YEAR" menu.

35 KEY 7 GTO A	Defines the A and V to return to the first row of the menu. The EXIT key does not need to be define again. The definition made at line 17 is still in effect.
36 KEY 8 GTO A	
37 LBL 21	Stops the program. The programmable menu is still selected (line 18).
38 STOP	
39 GTO 21	
40 LBL 99	
41 CLMENU	The menu definitions are cleared and the menu is exited. If this program was called as a subroutine from another program, execution returns to that program.
42 EXITALL	
43 RTN	
44 LBL 01	The rest of the program consists of the subroutines for each month (LBL 01 ... RTN, LBL 02 ... RTN, and so on). For example, you might want to create a message in each of these subroutines that displays the full name of the month and the number of days in that month.
:	

Many examples in the *HP-42S Programming Examples and Techniques* manual (part number 00042-90020) use the programmable menu.

Local Label Searches

Searches for local labels occur only within the current program. To find a local label, the calculator first searches sequentially downward through the current program, starting at the location of the program pointer. If the specified label is not found before reaching the end of the program, the calculator continues the search from the beginning of the program.

A local label search can consume a significant amount of time, depending on the length of the current program and the distance to the label. To minimize searching time, the calculator remembers the distance from the GTO or XEQ instruction to the specified local label.* This eliminates the searching time for subsequent executions of that same GTO or XEQ instruction.

Global Label Searches

When the calculator searches for a global label, the search begins with the *last* global label (bottom of program memory) and proceeds *upward*, stopping at the first label that matches the specified label. The search is in the same order as the labels are listed in the program catalog.

Conditional Functions

Flag tests and comparisons are *conditional functions*. They express a proposition that is either true or false depending on current conditions.

- Executing a conditional function from the keyboard generates a message: **Yes** if the proposition is currently true, or **No** if the proposition is currently false.
- Executing a conditional function in a program causes a program branch using the *do-if-true* rule. That is, the program line immediately following the conditional is executed *only* if the condition is true. If the condition is false, the next line is *skipped*. That is, DO the next instruction IF the condition is TRUE.

- * The distance to the label is stored internally as part of the GTO or XEQ instruction. If this distance is greater than 4,096 bytes in either direction (128 bytes for short form labels; LBL 00 through LBL 14), the calculator cannot store the distance and a search must take place for each execution of the instruction.

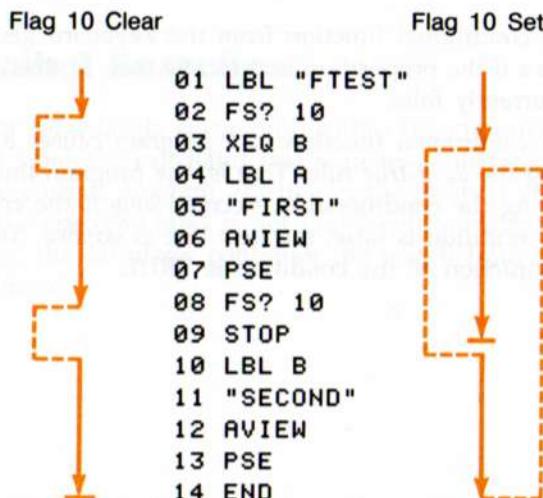
Flag Tests

The following table shows the four flag test functions and how each causes program branching (a skipped line) based on the status of the flag being tested. (These functions are in the FLAGS menu.)

Flag Test	If Flag Is Set	If Flag Is Clear
FS?	Execute the next program line.	Skip the next program line.
FC?	Skip the next program line.	Execute the next program line.
FS?C*	Clear flag and execute the next program line.	Clear flag and skip the next program line.
FC?C*	Clear flag and skip the next program line.	Clear flag and execute the next program line.

* This function can only be used with flags 00 through 35 and 81 through 99.

The following program demonstrates a subroutine call (line 03) and flag tests (lines 02 and 08). If flag 10 is clear, FIRST is displayed, and then SECOND. If flag 10 is set, the order of the messages is reversed.



Comparisons

To compare the X-register with zero:

1. Press **PGM.FCN** ▾ **X?0**.
2. Press **X=0?**, **X≠0?**, **X<0?**, **X>0?**, **X≤0?**, or **X≥0?**.

To compare the X-register with the Y-register:

1. Press **PGM.FCN** ▾ **X?Y**.
2. Press **X=Y?**, **X≠Y?**, **X<Y?**, **X>Y?**, **X≤Y?**, or **X≥Y?**.

If you execute one of these functions from the keyboard, the calculator displays Yes or No, indicating the result of the test. If a program executes one of these functions, the calculator follows the do-if-true rule.

Testing the Data Type

The following four functions test the type of data in the X-register. They also follow the do-if-true rule for program execution.

Function	Test Proposition
REAL?	Does the X-register contain a real number?
CPX?	Does the X-register contain a complex number?
MAT?	Does the X-register contain a matrix?
STR?	Does the X-register contain an Alpha string?

Bit Test

The BIT? (*bit test*) function tests a single bit of a number. If the x^{th} bit of y is a 1, then the test is true. Refer to chapter 16 for more information on the Base application and logic functions.

Looping

A loop is a sequence of program instructions that starts with a label and ends with a branch back to that label. An infinite loop is the simplest kind. Once started, this program runs until you stop it with **R/S** or **EXIT**.

```
01 LBL "LOOP"
02 BEEP
03 GTO "LOOP"
04 END
```

Looping Using Conditional Functions

When you want to perform an operation until a certain condition is met, but you don't know how many times the loop must repeat, you can create a loop with a conditional test and a GTO instruction.

For example, the following program loops until the RAN (*random number*) function returns a number that is at least 0.9. That is, the loop repeats if the random number is less than 0.9.

```
01 LBL "RANDOM"
02 LBL 01
03 0.9
04 RAN
05 X<Y?
06 GTO 01
07 END
```

Why does this program have two labels? Since the HP-42S only has to search for a local label once, the loop executes faster by branching to a local label. (Refer to "Local Label Searches" on page 148.) What's more, using a local label and corresponding GTO instruction (rather than branching to the global label) saves five bytes of program memory.

Loop-Control Functions

When you want to execute a loop a specific number of times, you can use special functions for that purpose—ISG (*increment, skip if greater*) and DSE (*decrement, skip if less than or equal*). Both functions (located in the PGM.FCN menu) take a parameter identifying the variable or register containing the number that controls the looping.

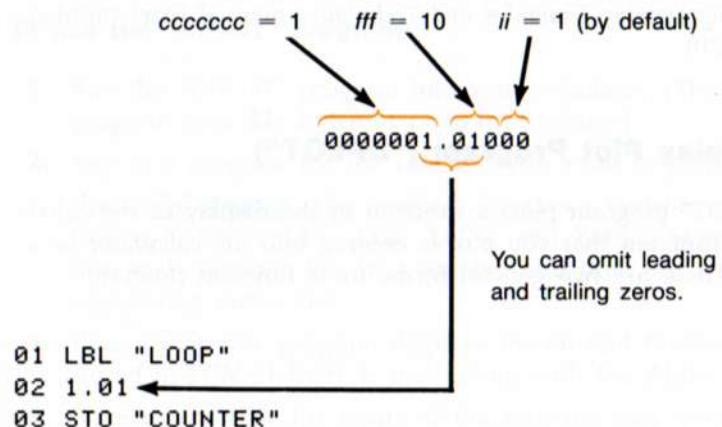
The format of the loop-control number is *cccccc.ffffii*, where:

- *cccccc* is the current counter value. Executing ISG or DSE increments or decrements *cccccc* by the value of *ii*.
- *fff* is the final counter value.
- *ii* is the increment/decrement value. If *ii* is 00 (or unspecified), the calculator uses a default value of 01.

Executing ISG increments *cccccc* by *ii*, and then compares the resulting value of *cccccc* with *fff*. If *cccccc* is greater than *fff*, the next program instruction is skipped.

Executing DSE decrements *cccccc* by *ii*, and then compares the resulting value of *cccccc* with *fff*. If *cccccc* is less than or equal to *fff*, the next program instruction is skipped.

Example: Using the ISG Function. The following program uses ISG to loop 10 times. The loop counter is stored into a variable named COUNTER and is interpreted by the ISG function like this:



```
04 LBL 01
05 VIEW "COUNTER"
06 PSE
07 ISG "COUNTER"
08 GTO 01
09 "DONE"
10 AVIEW
11 END
```

Controlling the CUSTOM Menu

If flag 27 is set when a program stops, the CUSTOM menu is displayed. Before displaying the menu, however, the calculator also checks flag 72.* If flag 72 is clear (indicated by **KEY** in the MODES menu), the CUSTOM menu displays menu assignments you have made. If flag 72 is set (indicated by **LCLB** in the MODES menu), the CUSTOM menu displays keys for executing local labels (page 301).

Example Programs

The programs in this section use many of the functions and techniques presented in chapters 8, 9, and 10. By examining them and using them, you should gain an even better understanding of programming. For many more programming examples, refer to the *HP-42S Programming Examples and Techniques* manual (part number 00042-90020).

The Display Plot Program (“DPLOT”)

The “DPLOT” program plots a function in the display of the calculator. The function that you plot is entered into the calculator as a program. There are two general forms for a function program:

* The calculator also checks flag 72 when you use **CUSTOM** to display the CUSTOM menu.

- As $f(x)$, where the program returns a value using an input value in the X-register. For example, to plot a sine curve ($f(x) = \sin x$), use a program like this:

```
01 LBL "SINE"
02 SIN
03 END
```

- As a Solver program. If the program uses menu variables, it is assumed to be written in the proper form for use with the Solver. Refer to “Writing a Program for the Solver” on page 179.

The name of the function is stored in a variable named *FCN*. Since Alpha strings stored in variables are limited to six characters, the global label that you use to identify the function cannot be longer than six characters.

You can determine what portion of the function is plotted by entering the limits of the plot:

YMIN = bottom of the display
YMAX = top of the display
XMIN = left end of the display
XMAX = right end of the display

You can also specify where you would like the *x*-axis to appear. Usually, the axis is at $y = 0$. If you don’t want an axis, specify a *y*-value that is less than *YMIN* or greater than *YMAX*.

To use the “DPLOT” program:

1. Key the “DPLOT” program into your calculator. (The “DPLOT” program uses 234 bytes of program memory.)
2. Key in a program for the function you want to plot.
3. Press **XEQ DPLOT**. The program displays a variable menu containing *YMIN*, *YMAX*, *AXIS*, *XMIN*, and *XMAX*. Store a value into each variable: key in a number and then press the corresponding menu key.
4. Press **R/S**. The program displays the current function name stored in *FCN* (if there is one) along with the Alpha menu.
5. If necessary, type the name of the function you want to plot.

6. Press **R/S**. If the function does not use menu variables, plotting begins.
7. If the function does use menu variables, the program stops and displays the variable menu. Using the variable menu:
 - a. Store a value into each of the known variables: key in a number and then press the corresponding menu key.
 - b. Press a menu key to select the plot variable. Plotting begins.

When the plot is finished, the program prints a copy of the display (if printing is enabled).

The example on page 185 uses "DPLOT" to plot a function for the Solver.

Program:

```

01 LBL "DPLOT"
02 MVAR "YMIN"
03 MVAR "YMAX"
04 MVAR "AXIS"
05 MVAR "XMIN"
06 MVAR "XMAX"

07 LBL A
08 VARMENU "DPLOT"
09 "Ready"
10 PROMPT

11 CLA
12 SF 25
13 RCL "FCN"
14 CF 25
15 STR?
16 ARCL ST X
17 RON
18 STOP

```

Comments:

Declares the menu variables.	Selects the variable menu, displays a Ready message, and stops the program.	Recalls the current function name (if there is one) into the Alpha register.	Turns on the ALPHA menu and stops the program so a function name can be entered or changed.
------------------------------	---	--	---

```

19 ROFF
20 ALENG
21 X=0?
22 GTO A
23 ASTO "FCN"

```

Turns off the ALPHA menu and tests the length of the Alpha register. If the Alpha register is empty, execution returns to the first variable menu. Otherwise, the function name is stored into FCN.

```

24 CLA
25 CF 81
26 SF 25
27 VARMENU IND "FCN"
28 FC?C 25
29 SF 81

```

Selects the variable menu for the function. If there are no menu variables, flag 81 is set.

```

30 FC? 81
31 STOP
32 EXITALL
33 ALENG
34 X=0?
35 SF 81
36 ASTO 03

```

Stops to display the variable menu (if flag 81 is clear). Tests the Alpha register to see if a plot variable has been selected. If not, flag 81 is set. The variable name is stored into R₀₃.

```

37 15
38 RCL "YMAX"
39 RCL- "YMIN"
40 ÷
41 STO 00

```

Calculates the *y*-value of one pixel.

```

42 RCL "XMIN"
43 STO 01
44 1.131
45 STO 02

```

Stores the first *x*-value and a loop counter. (There are 131 pixels across the display.)

```

46 CLLCD
47 XEQ "AXIS"

```

Clears the display and draws an axis.

```

48 LBL 01
49 RCL 01
50 FC? 81
51 STO IND 03
52 XEQ IND "FCN"

```

Recalls the current *x*-value. If flag 81 is clear, the *x*-value is stored into the plot variable. The function is then evaluated using the current *x*-value.

```
53 XEQ 02
54 RCL 02
55 PIXEL
56 RCL "XMAX"
57 RCL- "XMIN"
58 131
59 +
60 STO+ 01
61 ISG 02
62 GTO 01
63 PRLCD
64 RTN
65 GTO A
66 LBL 02
67 RCL- "YMIN"
68 RCL× 00
69 16
70 -
71 X>0?
72 CLX
73 ABS
74 RTN
75 LBL "AXIS"
76 RCL "AXIS"
77 XEQ 02
78 +/-
```

The value of the function is converted into a pixel number.

The *x*-value is incremented.

If the plot is done, the display is printed and the program stops. Line 65 allows the program to be restarted by pressing **R/S**.

Calculates a pixel number for the given *y*-value.

Draws an *x*-axis.

The Printer Plot Program (“PLOT”)

The “PLOT” program plots a function on the HP 82240A printer. The plot is created in sections. Each section is plotted in the display and then printed. The result is a continuous plot of the function on a strip of paper. (The *x*-axis runs lengthwise on the paper.)

Before plotting a function, you must write a program that expresses the function. The name of the function is stored into a variable named *FCN*. Since Alpha strings stored in variables are limited to six characters, the global label that you use to identify the function must be six or fewer characters.

You can determine what portion of the function is plotted by entering the limits of the plot:

YMIN = left edge of paper
YMAX = right edge of paper
XMIN = beginning *x*-value
XMAX = ending *x*-value
XINC = increment of *x*-values

The *x*-values are printed at increments determined by *XINC*. If you do not want these labels on your plot, set flag 00.

You can specify where you would like the *x*-axis to appear. Usually, the axis is at *y* = 0. If you do not want an axis, set flag 01.

To use the “PLOT” program:

1. Key the “PLOT” program into your calculator. (The “PLOT” program uses 337 bytes of program memory.)
2. Key in a program for the function you want to plot.
3. Press **XEQ PLOT**. The program displays a variable menu containing *YMIN*, *YMAX*, *AXIS*, *XMIN*, *XMAX*, and *XINC*. Store a value into each variable: key in a number and then press the corresponding menu key.
4. Press **R/S**. The program displays the current function name stored in *FCN* (if there is one) along with the Alpha menu.
5. If necessary, type the name of the function you want to plot.
6. Press **R/S** to begin the plot.

01 LBL "PLOT"	Declares the menu variables.	34 130	Calculates the <i>y</i> -value of one pixel.
02 MVAR "YMIN"		35 RCL "YMAX"	
03 MVAR "YMAX"		36 RCL- "YMIN"	
04 MVAR "AXIS"		37 ÷	
05 MVAR "XMIN"		38 STO 00	
06 MVAR "XMAX"		39 RCL "XMIN"	
07 MVAR "XINC"		40 STO 01	Stores the first <i>x</i> -value.
		41 LBL 00	Clears the display.
08 LBL A	Selects the variable menu and stops the program.	42 CLLCD	
09 VARMENU "PLOT"		43 FC? 00	Labels the <i>x</i> -increment if flag 00 is clear.
10 STOP		44 XEQ 05	
11 EXITALL	Exits from the variable menu and inputs a function name.	45 FC? 01	Draws an axis if flag 01 is clear.
12 XEQ 07		46 XEQ 06	
13 PRON	Prints the header information.	47 1.016	
14 ADV		48 STO 02	Stores a loop counter into R_{02} . (There are 16 rows of pixels in the display.)
15 "Plot of:"		49 LBL 01	Plots the current point.
16 PRA		50 RCL "FCN"	
17 ADV		51 STR?	
18 SF 12		52 XEQ 04	
19 CLA		53 RCL "XINC"	Increments the <i>x</i> -value.
20 ARCL "FCN"		54 16	
21 PRA		55 ÷	
22 ADV		56 STO+ 01	
23 CF 12		57 RCL "XMAX"	Goes to LBL 03 if the plot is done.
24 PRV "YMIN"		58 RCL 01	
25 PRV "YMAX"		59 X>Y?	
26 PRV "AXIS"		60 GTO 03	
27 PRV "XMIN"		61 ISG 02	Prints the display if all 16 values have been plotted.
28 PRV "XMAX"		62 GTO 01	
29 PRV "XINC"		63 PRLCD	
30 ADV		64 GTO 00	
31 " \leftarrow YMIN"			
32 " \rightarrow " YMAX \rightarrow "			
33 PRA			

```

65 LBL 03          Prints the final display. Line 68 allows
66 PRLCD           the program to be restarted by
67 RTN             pressing [R/S].
68 GTO R
69 LBL 04          Evaluates the function at the current
70 RCL 01           x-value and then plots the
71 XEQ IND ST Y   appropriate pixel.
72 SF 24
73 RCL- "YMIN"
74 RCLX 00
75 1
76 +
77 CF 24
78 RCL 02
79 X<>Y
80 X>0?
81 PIXEL
82 RTN
83 LBL 05          Puts an x-value into the display to
84 CF 21           label the x-axis.
85 CLA
86 ARCL 01
87 AVIEW
88 SF 21
89 RTN
90 LBL 06          Plots an x-axis. Note that line 102
91 1               is a string of multiply characters
92 RCL "AXIS"      ([ALPHA] [X] [X] [X] [X] [X] [ENTER]).
93 RCL- "YMIN"
94 RCLX 00
95 +/--
96 1
97 -
98 PIXEL
99 +/--
100 2
101 -
102 "xxxxxx"
103 AGRAPH
104 RTN

```

Prints the final display. Line 68 allows the program to be restarted by pressing [R/S].

Evaluates the function at the current x -value and then plots the appropriate pixel.

Puts an x -value into the display to label the x -axis.

Plots an x -axis. Note that line 102 is a string of multiply characters ([**ALPHA**] [**X**] [**X**] [**X**] [**X**] [**X**] [**ENTER**]).

```

105 LBL 07
106 CLA
107 SF 25
108 RCL "FCN"
109 CF 25
110 STR?
111 ARCL ST X
112 AON
113 STOP
114 AOFF
115 ASTO "FCN"
116 END

```

Recalls the current function name (if there is one) into the Alpha register. Turns on the ALPHA menu and stops the program. When the program continues (when [R/S] is pressed), the function name is stored into FCN.

Example: Using the Printer Plot Program. Key in the "PLOT" program listed above and the program "MISCFN" below. Plot the function with $YMIN = -0.5$, $YMAX = 2$, $AXIS = 0$, $XMIN = -360$, $XMAX = 360$, and $XINC = 45$.

```

01 LBL "MISCFN"
02 ENTER
03 ENTER
04 360
05 ÷
06 X<>Y
07 3
08 X
09 SIN
10 X
11 1
12 +
13 END

```

[**DISP**] [**ALL**] [**XEQ**] [**PLOT**]

.5 [**+/**] [**YMIN**]

x: 0
YMIN YMAX AXIS XMIN XMAX XINC

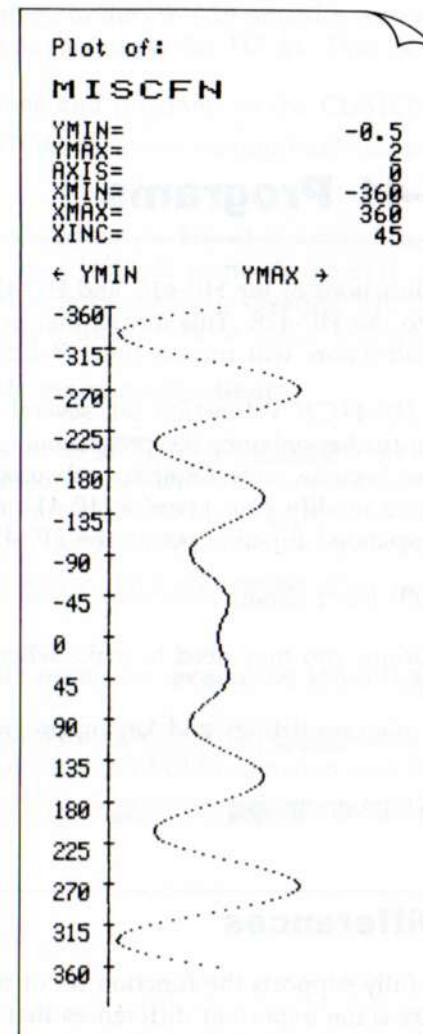
YMIN=-0.5
YMIN YMAX AXIS XMIN XMAX XINC

2 YMAX
 0 AXIS
 360 XMAX
 +/- XMIN
 45 XINC
 R/S
 MISCFN R/S

YMAX=	2				
YMIN	YMAX	AXIS	XMIN	XMAX	XINC
AXIS=	0				
YMIN	YMAX	AXIS	XMIN	XMAX	XINC
XMAX=	360				
YMIN	YMAX	AXIS	XMIN	XMAX	XINC
XMIN=-360					
YMIN	YMAX	AXIS	XMIN	XMAX	XINC
XINC=45					
YMIN	YMAX	AXIS	XMIN	XMAX	XINC
RECDE FGHI JKLM NOPQ RSTUV WXYZ					
-360 T <-->					
360 T					

The printer output is shown on the following page.

Printer Output:



Using HP-41 Programs

All programmable functions of the HP-41C and HP-41CV calculators have been built into the HP-42S. This means that programs written for these HP-41* calculators will run on the HP-42S.

In addition to the HP-41C/CV function set, several new functions have been added to further enhance the programming capabilities of the HP-42S. As you become more familiar with programming, you will probably want to modify your favorite HP-41 programs to take advantage of the expanded function set of the HP-42S.

In this chapter you'll learn about:

- Special considerations you may need to make when running some HP-41 programs.
- Reading HP-41 program listings and keying programs into the HP-42S.
- Enhancing HP-41 programs.

Important Differences

While the HP-42S fully supports the function set of the HP-41C/CV calculators, there are some important differences that you should not overlook. Under most circumstances, these differences will add to the accuracy or capability of an existing HP-41 program. Some HP-42S operations, however, may need to be disabled so operation more closely emulates the HP-41.

* "HP-41" is used in this chapter to refer to the HP-41C and HP-41CV calculators. Not all extended functions built into the HP-41CX calculator are supported by the HP-42S.

HP-41 User Keyboard

The CUSTOM menu in the HP-42S provides capabilities that are similar to the User keyboard on the HP-41. That is, you can:

- Assign functions and programs to the CUSTOM menu.
- Use the CUSTOM menu to execute local labels in the current program.

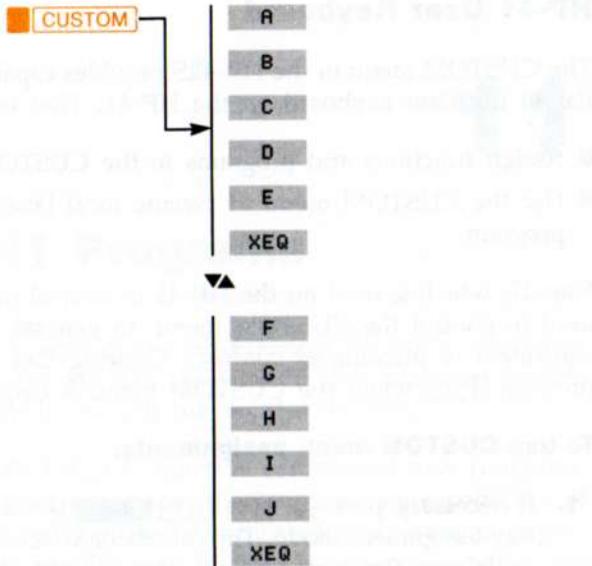
Flag 27, which is used on the HP-41 to control the User keyboard, is used to control the CUSTOM menu. In general, setting flag 27 is equivalent to pressing **CUSTOM**. Clearing flag 27 is equivalent to pressing **EXIT** when the CUSTOM menu is displayed.

To use CUSTOM menu assignments:

1. If necessary, press **MODES** ▼ **KEY** (*key assignments*) to select Key-assignment mode. The calculator selects this mode automatically each time you make an assignment to the CUSTOM menu (**ASSIGN**). The KEYASN function clears flag 72.
2. Press **CUSTOM** or **FLAGS** **SF** 27 to display the CUSTOM menu.

To use CUSTOM menu for executing local labels:

1. If necessary, press **MODES** ▼ **LCLBL** (*local label*) to select Local-label mode. The LCLBL function sets flag 72.
2. Press **CUSTOM** or **FLAGS** **SF** 27 to display the CUSTOM menu.



Pressing **A** through **J** executes the instructions XEQ A through XEQ J. Use the shift key (**■**) to execute XEQ a through XEQ e (**■ A** through **■ E**).

If you are using an HP-41 program that uses local Alpha labels, the instructions may say something like "Press **B**." When you're running the program, remember this means to press **B**. Similarly, if the instructions say "Press **b**," then press **■ B**.

Statistical Operations

Statistical operations on the HP-42S have been expanded (beyond the capabilities of the HP-41) to include curve fitting and forecasting. These enhanced features require the use of seven more summation coefficients than the HP-41 uses.

To use only 6 summation coefficients (like the HP-41): Press **■ STAT** **▼ LINΣ**.

To use all 13 summation coefficients (default): Press **■ STAT** **▼ ALLΣ**.

Printer Interface

Because the HP-42S uses a one-way infrared printer interface, it cannot tell if a printer is receiving the infrared signal. It's up to you to tell the calculator if a printer is available.

To enable printing: Press **■ PRINT** **▲ PON**.

To disable printing: Press **■ PRINT** **▲ POFF**.

Refer to chapter 7, "Printing," for more information.

The Alpha Register

The Alpha register in the HP-42S is 44 characters long, which is 20 characters longer than the Alpha register in the HP-41. Programs that specifically require the Alpha register to be 24 characters long may not produce the desired output.

Range of Numbers

The HP-42S uses 15 digits (a 12-digit mantissa and a 3-digit exponent of ten) to represent all real numbers. The HP-41, however, uses a 10-digit mantissa and a 2-digit exponent. Therefore, because of this increased range, calculations that generate an "OUT OF RANGE" error on the HP-41 may not be out of range on the HP-42S.

Note that the HP-42S returns an **Out of Range** error for the tangent of 90°. The HP-41 returns $9.999999999 \times 10^{99}$.

Data Errors and the Real-Result Flag

Because of its complex-number capabilities, the HP-42S can return results for calculations that would not work on the HP-41. The HP-42S automatically returns a complex number for calculations such as:

- Square root of a negative number.
- Logarithm of a negative number.
- Arc sine or arc cosine of a number whose absolute value is greater than 1.

To disable complex results for real-number operations:

Press **MODES** ▼ **RRES** (*real results only*). This function sets flag 74, which prevents the calculator from producing a complex result. Attempting an operation that would normally return a complex number displays **Invalid Data**.

Note that flag 74 is only observed if the inputs for a function are real numbers. That is, if one or more inputs for a function are already complex, the result will be complex, regardless of the state of flag 74.

To enable complex results for real-number operations:

Press **MODES** ▼ **CRES** (*complex-result enable*). This function clears flag 74 (default).

The Display

The HP-42S uses a two-line, 22-character display while the HP-41 uses a single-line, 12-character display. Therefore, programs that specifically format output for the HP-41 display may not produce the desired displays on the HP-42S.

The HP-42S does not *scroll* the display as the HP-41 does. The calculator indicates when a number is too large for the display by showing the ... (ellipsis) character. Press and hold **SHOW** to see the full-precision value for the number in the X-register.

Keystrokes

For the most part, the keystroke sequences on the HP-42S are similar to the HP-41. The following exceptions are worth noting:

- Alpha characters are typed with the ALPHA menu (page 37).
- Indirect addressing on the HP-41 uses the shift (**Shift**) key. The HP-42S, on the other hand, uses **[.** or **[] IND** to specify indirect parameters. (Refer to "Specifying Parameters" in chapter 4.)
- In addition to separating two numbers for calculations, the **ENTER** key has a few other uses. Refer to "Other Uses of the **ENTER** Key" on page 47.
- Pressing a key during a PSE (*pause*) causes program execution to stop. Press **R/S** to restart the program.

No Packing

If you're familiar with the HP-41, then you probably have seen the "PACKING" and "TRY AGAIN" messages. Packing removes any unused gaps in program memory. The HP-42S continuously keeps memory packed, so there is no need for a PACK function, and you'll never see a "PACKING" message.

Function Names

A number of function names used by the HP-42S are different from those on the HP-41, even though the functions work identically.

When keying in an HP-41 program, you can use *either* name for the functions in the following table. The calculator automatically converts each HP-41 function name to the corresponding HP-42S function. Note that HP-41 function names do not appear in the function catalog.

HP-41 Function Name	HP-42S Function Name
CHS	+/-
DEC	→DEC
D-R	→RAD
ENTER†	ENTER
FACT	N!
FRC	FP
HMS	→HMS
HR	→HR
INT	IP
OCT	→OCT
P-R	→REC
RDN	R↓
R-D	→DEG
R-P	→POL

HP-41 Function Name	HP-42S Function Name
ST+	STO+
ST-	STO-
ST*	STO×
ST/	STO÷
X<=0?	X≤0?
X<=Y?	X≤Y?
*	x
/	÷

Stack Registers. The HP-42S distinguishes stack registers with ST. For example, the HP-41 instruction 10 VIEW X is equivalent to the HP-42S instruction 10 VIEW ST X.*

Alpha Strings. The HP-41 displays Alpha strings in programs with the T character. The HP-42S, however, surrounds Alpha strings with quotation marks. For example, the HP-41 program line 03 THELLO is equivalent to the HP-42S instruction 03 "HELLO". Similarly, 04 T+THERE is equivalent to 04 +THERE". (Note that some printers may not be able to print the append character.)

Example: Keying in an HP-41 Program. The following program was taken unaltered from the *HP-41CV Owner's Manual*. The program finds the roots of the equation $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$, where a, b, and c are constants. The solutions can be found using the quadratic formula, namely:

$$x = \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a}$$

Key the program into memory:

HP-41 Program Listing: HP-42S Keystrokes:

```

01 LBL "QUAD"
02 "a=?"
03 PROMPT
04 2
05 *
06 STO 00
07 "b=?"
08 PROMPT
09 CHS
10 STO 01
11 "c=?"
12 PROMPT
13 RCL 00
14 *
15 2
16 *
17 RCL 01
18 X↑2
19 X<>Y
20 -
21 X<0?
22 GTO 01
23 SQRT
24 STO 02
25 RCL 01
26 +
27 RCL 00
28 /
29 "ROOTS="
30 ARCL X
31 AVIEW
32 PSE
33 RCL 01
34 RCL 02

```

* It is *not* equivalent to the instruction 10 VIEW "X", which displays a variable named X.

```

35 -
36 RCL 00
37 /
38 "AND "
39 ARCL X
40 AVIEW
41 RTN
42 LBL 01
43 "ROOTS COMPLEX"
44 AVIEW
45 .END.

```

-
 RCL 00
 +
ALPHA AND (space)
 ARCL [] ST X
PGM.FCN **PGM.FCN** AVIEW
 RTN
 LBL 01
ALPHA ROOTS COMPLEX [ENTER]
 AVIEW
 EXIT

After keying in the program, exit Program-entry mode and run the program for $a = 1$, $b = 7$, and $c = 12$.

EXIT	XEQ	QUAD	a=? x: 0.0000
1	R/S		b=? x: 2.0000
7	R/S		c=? x: -7.0000
12	R/S		ROOTS=-3.0000 x: -3.0000
			AND -4.0000 x: -4.0000

Enhancing HP-41 Programs

The HP-42S has a number of functions that you may want to incorporate into existing HP-41 programs. The following list can help you start thinking about enhancements for your HP-41 programs:

- Use named variables instead of storage registers to make your programs easier to understand (chapter 3).
- Take advantage of automatic labeling by using the INPUT and VIEW functions (chapter 9).
- Create CUSTOM menu key assignments that aid in executing programs or routines within programs (pages 68 and 112).
- Modify messages to take advantage of the larger display (page 129).
- Use program-controlled menus to enhance the *user interface* of a program (pages 125 and 145).

The *HP-42S Programming Examples and Techniques* manual (part number 00042-90020) uses the "QUAD" program from the preceding example to demonstrate how to enhance an HP-41 program.



Part 3

Built-In Applications

- Page 178 12: The Solver**
196 13: Numerical Integration
205 14: Matrix Operations
228 15: Statistics
245 16: Base Operations

Engineering Math Functions include built-in applications that make it easier to perform calculations. These functions are more dangerous than the built-in functions because they can easily damage your program or the memory of your calculator.

The built-in applications are located in the **APPS** menu. To access the **APPS** menu, press **MENU**, then select **APPS**. The following applications are included:

Solver: Solves equations and systems of equations. It can handle linear, quadratic, polynomial, rational, exponential, logarithmic, and trigonometric equations.

Numerical Integration: Calculates definite integrals using numerical methods. It can handle functions with one variable.

Matrix Operations: Performs operations on matrices, including addition, subtraction, multiplication, and inversion. It can handle matrices with up to 10 columns and 10 rows.

Statistics: Performs statistical calculations on lists of data. It can handle lists with up to 10 elements.

Base Operations: Performs operations on numbers in different bases, including binary, octal, decimal, and hexadecimal.

These built-in applications are powerful tools for solving complex engineering problems. However, they can also be dangerous if used incorrectly. It's important to understand how each application works before using it in your programs.

When using these applications, it's important to remember that they can damage your calculator if used incorrectly. It's always a good idea to save your work before using these applications, just in case something goes wrong. If you're not sure how to use a particular application, consult the documentation or ask for help from a teacher or mentor.

These built-in applications are great tools for solving complex engineering problems. They can help you quickly and easily perform calculations that would otherwise take a long time to do by hand. However, it's important to remember that they can also be dangerous if used incorrectly. It's always a good idea to save your work before using these applications, just in case something goes wrong.

If you're not sure how to use a particular application, consult the documentation or ask for help from a teacher or mentor. These built-in applications are great tools for solving complex engineering problems. They can help you quickly and easily perform calculations that would otherwise take a long time to do by hand. However, it's important to remember that they can also be dangerous if used incorrectly. It's always a good idea to save your work before using these applications, just in case something goes wrong.

12

The Solver

The built-in Solver application ( SOLVER) is a special root finder that enables you to solve an equation for any of its variables. In this chapter, you'll learn how to:

- Solve for an unknown.
- Find the root(s) of an equation.
- Make initial guesses to help guide the Solver to a solution.
- Interpret the results returned by the Solver.
- Use the Solver in a program.

Additional examples using the Solver are included at the end of this chapter. They include the equation of motion for free-fall and the time value of money equation.

Using the Solver

The general procedure for solving is:

1. Enter a program that defines the function to be solved.
2. Press  SOLVER and then select the program you want to solve.
3. For each known variable, key in a value and then store the value by pressing the corresponding menu key.
4. Calculate the unknown variable by pressing the corresponding variable menu key.

Step 1: Writing a Program for the Solver

Before you use the Solver you must write a program or subroutine that evaluates $f(x)$ for the function you want to solve. When you're writing the program, keep in mind that:

- The program must begin with a global label.
- The program must define the variables that will appear in the Solver variable menu.
- The Solver may execute your program many times to find a solution. Therefore, the length and efficiency of your program may affect the amount of time required to find a solution.

How the Solver Uses Your Program. The Solver executes your program using different values for the unknown variable. During each successive evaluation, the Solver moves closer to a solution. In most cases, the Solver eventually finds a value for the unknown variable that causes your function to evaluate to zero. This value is a solution.

Generally, the Solver finds a solution. However, it may encounter mathematical conditions in which a solution cannot be found. Refer to "How the Solver Works" on page 186.

Simplifying the Function. As with many mathematical procedures, the first step to solving a problem is simplification. Here you'll have to call upon your own expertise to simplify the equation. In general, you should attempt to combine like terms and constants, reducing the equation to the form

$$f(x) = 0$$

where $f(x)$ is a function of one or more variables. For example, the equation for the volume of a box is given by

$$\text{Length} \times \text{Width} \times \text{Height} = \text{Volume}.$$

Rearranging terms gives

$$\text{Length} \times \text{Width} \times \text{Height} - \text{Volume} = 0.$$

Written as a program for the Solver, the function looks like this:

```
01 LBL "VOL" The global label identifies the program.  
02 MVAR "L" These lines identify the menu variables to appear  
03 MVAR "W"  
04 MVAR "H"  
05 MVAR "V"  
  
06 RCL "L" This is the body of the program that calculates  
07 RCL× "W" f(x). (Recalling data and recall arithmetic are cov-  
08 RCL× "H" ered in chapter 3.)  
09 RCL- "V"  
10 END
```

Defining Menu Variables. MVAR (*menu variable*) instructions define which variables appear in the Solver variable menu. These definitions must be grouped together (sequential line numbers) and must immediately follow the global label. The calculator ignores MVAR instructions that occur anywhere else in the program.

Your program may use any number of variables; however, only those defined with MVAR appear in the Solver variable menu.

The Body of the Program. The main purpose of the program is to calculate the function, $f(x)$. Key in the instructions just as if you were solving the equation from the keyboard. Recall each variable as it is needed.

Example: Keying In a Solver Program. Key the "VOL" program into your calculator.

A helpful hint: programs that use variables are easier to key in if the variables already exist. Before keying in the program, create the variables V , H , W , and L by storing a zero into each one.

```
0 [STO] [ENTER] V [ENTER]
```

Y: 0.0000
X: 0.0000

```
[STO] [ENTER] H [ENTER]
```

Y: 0.0000
X: 0.0000

```
[STO] [ENTER] W [ENTER]
```

Y: 0.0000
X: 0.0000

```
[STO] [ENTER] L [ENTER]
```

Y: 0.0000
X: 0.0000

Go to a new program space, select Program-entry mode, and key in the "VOL" program listed above.

[GTO] [] []

[PRGM]

[PGM.FCN] [LBL] VOL [ENTER]

00►C 0-Byte Prgm 3
01 .END.

00 (7-Byte Prgm)
01►LBL "VOL"

Pressing [SOLVER] in Program-entry mode displays a menu containing the MVAR function.

[SOLVER] MVAR L

02►MVAR "L"
MVAR [] [] PSLV SOLVE

MVAR W

03►MVAR "W"
MVAR [] [] PSLV SOLVE

MVAR H

04►MVAR "H"
MVAR [] [] PSLV SOLVE

MVAR V EXIT

04 MVAR "H"
05►MVAR "V"

RCL L

05 MVAR "V"
06►RCL "L"

RCL X W

06 RCL "L"
07►RCL× "W"

RCL X H

07 RCL× "W"
08►RCL× "H"

RCL V

08 RCL \times "H"
09 RCL $-$ "V"

Press **EXIT** to exit Program-entry mode.

Step 2: Selecting a Program To Solve

When you execute the Solver from the keyboard (SOLVER), it prompts you to select a program. All global labels that are followed by MVAR instructions are displayed in a menu. Select a program by pressing the corresponding menu key. (If there are more than six labels, use **▲** or **▼** to find the program you're looking for.)

Example. Select the "VOL" program entered in the previous example. The Solver immediately displays the variable menu for "VOL".

SOLVER VOL

X: 0.0000
L W H V

Step 3: Storing the Known Variables

When you select a program to solve, the calculator searches for menu variables used by the program and displays a variable menu. Use the variable menu to store values into the known variables. Refer to page 125 for more information about using variable menus.

Example. Store these dimensions: $length = 5$ cm, $width = 7$ cm, and $height = 12$ cm. Key in each value and then press the corresponding menu key.

5 L

L=5.0000
L W H V

7 W

W=7.0000
L W H V

12 H

H=12.0000
L W H V

Step 4: Solving for the Unknown

After storing the known values, all that remains is to press the menu key for the unknown. The Solver immediately begins searching for a solution. During this process, the Solver displays two numbers. These numbers represent the two current estimates of the solution.

Example. Solve for the volume of a box using the dimensions entered in the previous example.

V

V=420.0000
L W H V

The volume is 420 cm^3 .

Using the same length and height, what is the width of a box if the volume is 400 cm^3 ? Store the known volume.

400 V

V=400.0000
L W H V

Solve for the width.

W

W=6.6667
L W H V

Choosing Initial Guesses

By entering guesses, you can control the initial estimates used in a search for a solution. Since the search starts in the range between the two initial estimates, entering guesses can reduce the number of iterations required to find a solution. Also, if more than one solution exists, guesses can help select the solution you desire.

A useful application of providing initial guesses is finding multiple roots of an equation. For example, the expression $(x - 3)(x - 2)$ has roots at $x = 3$ and $x = 2$. The root that the Solver finds depends on the starting point for its search. Initial guesses tell the Solver where to begin.

To enter guesses for the unknown variable:

1. Key in the first guess; press the menu key for the unknown variable.
2. Key in the second guess; press the menu key again.
3. Press the menu key a third time to begin solving.

Example: Finding Multiple Roots of an Equation. A solution for a single unknown, say x , is a root if $f(x) = 0$. Consider the following equation:

$$x^3 - 5x^2 - 10x = -20.$$

Rearranging terms gives

$$x^3 - 5x^2 - 10x + 20 = 0.$$

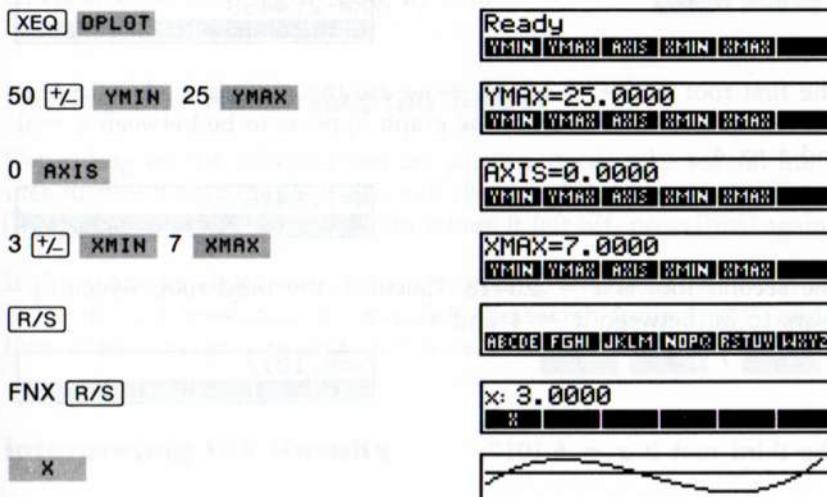
By factoring out an x , the equation is easier to write as a program.

$$x(x^2 - 5x - 10) + 20 = 0$$

Key in the following program:

```
01 LBL "FNX" The program defines a single menu variable, X.  
02 MVAR "X"  
  
03 RCL "X" Recalls X and makes an extra copy.  
04 ENTER  
  
05 X2 Calculates (x2 - 5x - 10).  
06 LASTX  
07 5  
08 x  
09 -  
10 10  
11 -  
  
12 x Calculates x(x2 - 5x - 10) using the extra copy of  
     X made in line 04.  
13 20  
14 +  
15 END
```

If you have the "DPLOT" program in your calculator (page 156), you can plot $f(x) = x^3 - 5x^2 - 10x + 20$ in the display like this:



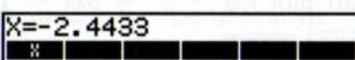
By examining the plot, you can see that there are three roots (intersections with the x -axis). Use the Solver to find each root.



Since X is the only variable declared in the program, it's the only one that appears in the Solver menu. By carefully choosing your guesses, you can zero in on each root. The graph shows that the first root is somewhere between $x = -3$ and $x = 0$. Enter the first guess.



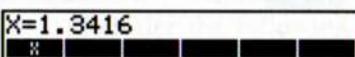
Enter the second guess and then solve for X.

0 

x = -2.4433

#

The first root is $x = -2.4433$. Now use the same procedure to find the second root, which from the graph appears to be between $x = 0$ and $x = 4$.

0 

x = 1.3416

#

The second root is $x = 1.3416$. Calculate the third root, which appears to be between $x = 4$ and $x = 7$.

4 

x = 6.1017

#

The third root is $x = 6.1017$.

How the Solver Works

The Solver uses an iterative (repetitive) process to search for a solution that sets the function equal to zero. The Solver starts with two initial estimates of the answer—your guesses, or numbers it generates. Using one of the estimates, the Solver evaluates your program. Then, the Solver repeats the calculation using the other estimate. If neither estimate produces a value of zero, the Solver produces two new estimates that appear to be closer to the answer. By repeating this process many times, the Solver approaches a solution.

6.10402112301 +
6.06268001092 -

During the search for a solution, the calculator displays the two current estimates for the unknown.* Next to each estimate, the calculator displays a sign (+ or -). Each sign indicates whether the function is positive or negative at that estimate.

* Estimates are not displayed when a program executes the Solver.

A question mark next to an estimate indicates the function cannot be evaluated at that estimate. Generally, this is because of some mathematical error, such as dividing by zero.

Halting and Restarting the Solver

Depending on the function you are solving, it can take several minutes to find a solution. You can halt the search by pressing [R/S] (or [EXIT]). To resume the search from where it left off, press [R/S] again.

If the estimates don't seem to be proceeding towards a number you judge to be a reasonable answer, halt the search (press [R/S]), and then enter new guesses and start over.

Interpreting the Results

There are several possible outcomes of an iterative search for a solution. The Solver returns data to the stack registers that can be used to help you interpret the results. For a more detailed description of these conditions, refer to the *HP-42S Programming Examples and Techniques* manual (part number 00042-90020).

Stack Register	Contents
T	An integer (0–4) indicating the condition that caused the Solver to stop. 0 = A solution has been found. 1 = A sign reversal has occurred. 2 = An extremum has been found. 3 = Bad guess(es) were used. 4 = The function may be a constant.
Z	The value of the function evaluated at the solution. If an actual root has been found, the Z-register contains a zero.
Y	The previous guess.
X	The solution (or the best guess if a solution was not found).

Solution Found. A solution has been found that may be a root. If you want to know if the result is an actual root, you can:

- Test the contents of the Z-register. If this number is equal to zero, then the solution is an actual root.
- Press the menu key to solve for the unknown again. If you get the same result (without a message), the solution is an actual root. If, on the other hand, you see the message **Sign Reversal**, then the result is only an approximation to a root.

Sign Reversal. A discontinuity or pole has been found. The Solver has found neighboring points for which the value of the function changes sign, but no point at which it evaluates to zero.

Extremum. The Solver has found an approximation to a local minimum or maximum of the numerical absolute value of the function. If the solution is $\pm 9.9999999999 \times 10^{499}$, it corresponds to an asymptotic extremum.

Bad Guess(es). If the Solver stops and displays **Bad Guess(es)**, one or both initial guesses lie outside of the domain of the function. That is, the function returns an error when evaluated at the values of the guesses.

Constant? If the Solver stops and displays **Constant?**, the function returns the same value at every point sampled by the Solver, suggesting that the function may be constant.

Using the Solver in a Program

To use the Solver in a program, the program must:

1. Select a program using the PGMSLV (*program to solve*) function.
2. Store the known variables.
3. Provide initial guesses for the unknown (optional). The first guess is stored into the variable. The second guess is taken from the X-register.
4. Solve for the unknown with the SOLVE function.

For example, the following program segment illustrates how the "VOL" program could be solved by another program. This program multiplies the current value of *L* by 3 and stores that value into *H*. That value is then multiplied by 3 again and stored into *V*. The program then solves for *W*.

```
01 LBL "BOXSLV"  
02 PGMSLV "VOL"  
  
03 RCL "L"  
04 3  
05 ×  
06 STO "H"  
07 3  
08 ×  
09 STO "V"  
  
10 SOLVE "W"  
11 GTO IND ST T  
    :
```

Selects "VOL" as the program to solve.

Calculates new values for *H* and *V*.

Solves for *W*.

Branches to the subroutine specified by the code (0–4) in the *T*-register. That is, the program branches to LBL 00 if a solution is found, LBL 01 if a sign reversal occurred, LBL 02 if an extremum was found, LBL 03 if the guesses were bad, or LBL 04 if the function is a constant. (Refer to the table on page 187).

More Solver Examples

The Equation of Motion for Free-Fall

The equation of motion for a free-falling object is

$$\text{Distance} = v_0t + \frac{1}{2}gt^2$$

where v_0 is the initial velocity, t is the time, and g is the acceleration due to gravity. The Solver enables you to solve for any of the variables, given values for the other variables.

Rearranging terms gives

$$0 = v_0t + \frac{1}{2}gt^2 - \text{Distance}.$$

Written as a program for the Solver, the equation looks like this:

```
01 LBL "FREE"           Defines the menu variables for
02 MVAR "Dist"          the program.
03 MVAR "Vo"
04 MVAR "Time"
05 MVAR "g"
06 RCL "Vo"             Calculates  $v_0t$ .
07 RCL "Time"
08 ×
09 LASTX
10 X+2
11 RCL× "g"            Calculates  $\frac{1}{2}gt^2$ .
12 2
13 ÷
14 +
15 RCL- "Dist"          Adds the two intermediate results:  $v_0t + \frac{1}{2}gt^2$ .
16 END                  Subtracts the distance, which completes  $f(x)$ .
```

Since the acceleration due to gravity, g , is a menu variable, you can change it to match the units of the problem you're working. It also allows you to calculate g based on experimental data.

Example. Calculate how far an object falls in 5 seconds (starting from rest). Before you begin, go to a new program space and key in the program listed above.

 x: 0.0000
DIST VO TIME G

The object is starting at rest, so $v_0 = 0$.

 Vo=0.0000
DIST VO TIME G

Store the appropriate acceleration constant. To get a final result in meters, use 9.8 m/s^2 .

 g=9.8000
DIST VO TIME G

Store the time (5 seconds).

 Time=5.0000
DIST VO TIME G

Now solve for the distance.

 DIST
Dist=122.5000
DIST VO TIME G

An object falls 122.5 meters in 5 seconds.

Try another calculation: how long does it take an object to fall 500 meters? Since v_0 and g are already stored, there's no need to store them again. Store the distance.

 Dist=500.0000
DIST VO TIME G

Calculate the time.

 TIME
Time=10.1015
DIST VO TIME G

It takes slightly more than 10 seconds for an object to fall 500 meters.

The Time Value of Money Equation

The time value of money equation

$$0 = PV + (1 + ip) PMT \left[\frac{1 - (1 + i)^{-N}}{i} \right] + FV (1 + i)^{-N}$$

establishes the relationships between the following variables:

- N** The number of monthly payments or compounding periods.
- I%YR** The annual interest rate as a fraction ($i = I\%YR \div 1200$).
- PV** The present value. (This can also be an initial cash flow or a discounted value of a series of future cash flows.) *PV* always occurs at the beginning of the first month.
- PMT** The monthly payment.
- FV** The future value. (This can also be a final cash flow or a compounded value of a series of cash flows.) *FV* always occurs at the end of the *N*th month.

The value *p* indicates payment timing. If *p* = 1, then payments occur at the *beginning* of each month. If *p* = 0, then payments occur at the *end* of each month. The "TVM" program uses flag 00 to represent *p*. For payments at the beginning a each month, set flag 00. For payments at the end of each month, clear flag 00.

Note



The correct *sign* (positive or negative) for TVM numbers is essential. The calculations will make sense only if you consistently show *payments out* as *negative* and *payments in* (receipts) as *positive*. Perform a calculation from the point of view of *either* the lender (investor) or the borrower, but not both!

Here is how the equation can be written as a program for the Solver:

```
01 LBL "TVM"          Declares the menu variables.  
02 MVAR "N"  
03 MVAR "I%YR"  
04 MVAR "PV"  
05 MVAR "PMT"  
06 MVAR "FV"  
  
07 1  
08 ENTER  
09 ENTER  
10 RCL "I%YR"  
11 %  
12 12  
13 ÷  
14 STO ST T  
15 FC? 00  
16 CLX  
17 +  
18 R+  
19 +  
20 RCL "N"  
21 +/-  
22 Y↑X  
  
23 1  
24 X<>Y  
25 -  
26 LASTX  
27 RCLX "FV"  
28 R+  
29 X<>Y  
30 ÷  
31 X  
  
32 RCLX "PMT"  
33 +  
34 RCL+ "PV"  
35 END
```

Calculates the monthly interest rate expressed as a decimal fraction, *i*.

$X = i, Y = 1, Z = 1, T = i$

If flag 00 is clear (End mode), calculates $(i + 0)$. If flag 00 is set (Begin mode), calculates $(i + 1)$.

Calculates $(1 + i)^{-N}$.

Calculates $1 - (1 + i)^{-N}$.

Calculates $FV (1 + i)^{-N}$.

Calculates $(1+ip) \left[\frac{1 - (1 + i)^{-N}}{i} \right]$.

Example. Penny of Penny's Accounting wants to know what the monthly payments will be for a 3-year loan at 10.5% annual interest, compounded monthly. The amount financed is \$5,750. Payments are made at the end of each period.

After keying in the program above, use the Solver to calculate the unknown information for Penny.

SOLVER TVM

x: 0.0000	N	I%YR	PV	PMT	FV
-----------	---	------	----	-----	----

Clear flag 00 and set the display format to FIX 2.

FLAGS CF 00
DISP FIX 02

x: 0.00	N	I%YR	PV	PMT	FV
---------	---	------	----	-----	----

Enter the known values: $PV = 5750$, $FV = 0$, $I\%YR = 10.5$, and $N = 3 \times 12$.

5750 PV

PV=5,750.00	N	I%YR	PV	PMT	FV
-------------	---	------	----	-----	----

0 FV

FV=0.00	N	I%YR	PV	PMT	FV
---------	---	------	----	-----	----

10.5 I%YR

I%YR=10.50	N	I%YR	PV	PMT	FV
------------	---	------	----	-----	----

3 ENTER 12 × N

N=36.00	N	I%YR	PV	PMT	FV
---------	---	------	----	-----	----

Now solve for the payment.

PMT

PMT=-186.89	N	I%YR	PV	PMT	FV
-------------	---	------	----	-----	----

The payment is negative because it is money to be *paid out*.

This is \$10 higher than Penny's client can pay each month. What interest rate would reduce the monthly payments by \$10? Add 10 to the negative payment that's already in the X-register and store the new value into PMT.

10 + PMT

PMT=-176.89	N	I%YR	PV	PMT	FV
-------------	---	------	----	-----	----

Now, solve for the interest rate.

I%YR

I%YR=6.75	N	I%YR	PV	PMT	FV
-----------	---	------	----	-----	----

Return to FIX 4 display mode and exit from the Solver.

DISP FIX 04 EXIT EXIT

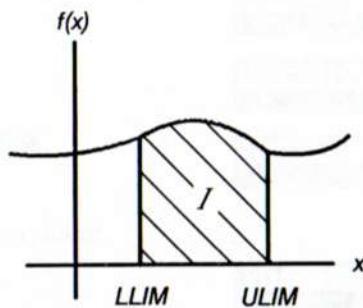
y: 6.7509	x: 6.7509
-----------	-----------

13

Numerical Integration

Many problems in mathematics, science, and engineering require calculating the definite integral of a function. If the function is denoted by $f(x)$ and the interval of integration is from the lower limit ($LLIM$) to the upper limit ($ULIM$), then the integral can be expressed mathematically as

$$I = \int_{LLIM}^{ULIM} f(x) dx.$$



The quantity I can be interpreted geometrically as the area of a region bounded by the graph of $f(x)$, the x -axis, and the limits $x = LLIM$ and $x = ULIM$ (provided that $f(x)$ is nonnegative throughout the interval of integration).

In this chapter, you'll learn how to use the HP-42S Integration application () to calculate a definite integral.

Using Integration

The general procedure for calculating an integral is:

1. Enter a program that defines the function $f(x)$ that you want to integrate.
2. Press and then select the program you want to integrate.
3. For each constant used in $f(x)$, key in a value and then store the value by pressing the corresponding menu key.
4. Select a variable of integration by pressing the corresponding menu key.
5. Enter the limits of integration and an accuracy factor, and then press to calculate the integral.

Step 1: Writing a Program for Integration

Before you can calculate the definite integral of $f(x)$, you must write a program that evaluates $f(x)$ given x . While writing the program, keep in mind:

- The program must begin with a global label.
- The program must define all variables you want to appear in the Integration variable menu.
- The Integration application may execute your program many times to find a solution. Therefore, the length and efficiency of your program affects the amount of time it takes to calculate the integral.

How an Integral Is Calculated. The HP-42S evaluates an integral by computing a weighted average of the function's values at many values of the variable of integration within the interval of integration. These are known as sample points.

The integration algorithm at first considers only a few sample points, yielding relatively inaccurate approximations. If these approximations are not yet as accurate as the accuracy of $f(x)$ would permit, the algorithm is iterated (repeated) with a larger number of sample points. These iterations continue, using about twice as many sample points each time, until the resulting approximation is accurate as specified by the accuracy factor.

Depending on the number of iterations needed, it may take a few seconds to several minutes to calculate a result.

Defining Menu Variables. MVAR (*menu variable*) instructions define which variables appear in the Integration variable menu. These definitions must be grouped together (sequential line numbers) and must immediately follow the global label. The Integration application ignores MVAR instructions that occur anywhere else in the program.

Your program may use any number of variables; however, only those defined with MVAR appear in the Integration variable menu.

Example: Keying in a Program for Integration. The Bessel function of the first kind of order 0 can be expressed as

$$J_0(x) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_0^{\pi} \cos(x \sin t) dt.$$

Written as a program, this function looks like this:

```
01 LBL "BSSL"           Declares the menu variables.
02 MVAR "X"
03 MVAR "T"
04 RCL "T"               Calculates  $f(x) = \cos(x \sin t)$ .
05 SIN
06 RCLx "X"
07 COS
08 END
```

Create the variables and then key the program into the calculator.

0 STO [ENTER] T [ENTER]	Y: 0.0000
STO [ENTER] X [ENTER]	X: 0.0000
[GTO] [] []	
[PRGM]	00►C 0-Byte Prgm 01 .END.
[PGM.FCN] [LBL] BSSL [ENTER]	00 { 8-Byte Prgm } 01►LBL "BSSL"

■ f(x) MVAR X	02►MVAR "X"
MVAR T EXIT	MVAR ■ ■ ■ PINT INTEG
RCL T	02 MVAR "X" 03►MVAR "T"
SIN	03 MVAR "T" 04►RCL "T"
RCL X X	04 RCL "T" 05►SIN
COS	05 SIN 06►RCLx "X"
	06 RCLx "X" 07►COS

Press [EXIT] to exit Program-entry mode.

Step 2: Selecting a Program To Integrate

When you select the Integration application (■ f(x)), it prompts you to select a program. All global labels that are followed by MVAR instructions are displayed in a menu. Select a program by pressing the corresponding menu key. (If there are more than six labels, use ▲ or ▼ to find the program you're looking for.)

Example. Select the “BSSL” program entered in the previous example. The Integration application immediately displays the variable menu for “BSSL”.

■ f(x) BSSL	Set Vars; Select fvar
	■ ■ ■ ■ ■ ■

Step 3: Storing the Constants

The Integration application displays a variable menu for the function you selected. Use it to store each constant in the function:

1. Key in the constant value.
2. Press the corresponding menu key.

To view the contents of a variable without recalling it, press the shift key (■) and then hold down the corresponding menu key. The message disappears when you release the key.

Example. For the first evaluation of the Bessel integral, the constant X is 2.

2 ■ X

X=2.0000
X T

Step 4: Selecting a Variable of Integration

After storing the constants, press the menu key for the variable of integration. Do not key in a number (or alter the X-register in any way) before you press the key. If you do, the calculator assumes you are storing another constant. Press the key again. If the calculator displays a menu with the variables LLIM, ULIM, and ACC, then you have successfully selected a variable of integration. If you select the wrong variable, press **EXIT** and try again.

Example. Select T as the variable of integration for the Bessel function.

T

X=2.0000
LLIM ULIM ACC

Step 5: Setting the Limits and Calculating the Integral

The menu displayed in the example above is used to store the limits of integration and an accuracy factor.

Lower Limit (LLIM). The LLIM variable specifies the left end of the x-range for the integral. To store a new value into LLIM, key in the value and then press **LLIM**.

Upper Limit (ULIM). The ULIM variable specifies the right end of the x-range for the integral. To store a new value into ULIM, key in the value and then press **ULIM**.

Accuracy Factor (ACC). The ACC variable specifies the accuracy factor to be used during the integration. The smaller the accuracy factor, the more accurate the integral calculation (which also increases execution time). To store a new value into ACC, key in the value and then press **ACC**.

Calculating the Integral. To calculate the integral, press **J**. You can stop the calculation of the integral at any time by pressing **R/S** (or **EXIT**). To resume the calculation, press **R/S** again.

Example. Store the limits of integration to integrate the Bessel function from 0 to π radians.

MODES RAD

0 ■ LLIM

■ π ■ ULIM

x: 2.0000
LLIM ULIM ACC

LLIM=0.0000
LLIM ULIM ACC

ULIM=3.1416
LLIM ULIM ACC

Store an accuracy factor.

.01 ■ ACC

ACC=0.0100
LLIM ULIM ACC

Now calculate the integral.

J

J=0.7043
LLIM ULIM ACC

Divide the result by π (the constant outside the integral).

$x: 0.2242$
LLIM ULIM ACC \int

Now change the constant, X, to 3 and calculate the integral again.

$X=3.0000$
S T \int

$S=-0.8142$
LLIM ULIM ACC \int

$x: -0.2592$
LLIM ULIM ACC \int

Exit from the Integration application.

$y: 0.0219$
 $x: -0.2592$

The value of the integral is in the X-register, and the *uncertainty of computation* (described below) is in the Y-register.

Accuracy of Integration

Since the calculator cannot compute the value of an integral exactly, it *approximates* it. The accuracy of this approximation depends on the accuracy of the integrand's function itself as calculated by your program.* This is affected by round-off error in the calculator and the accuracy of the empirical constants.

The Accuracy Factor. The accuracy factor (ACC) is a real number that specifies the relative error tolerance of the integration. The accuracy determines the spacing of the points, in the domain of the integration variable, at which the integrand is sampled for the approximation of the integral.

The accuracy is specified as a fractional error, that is

$$ACC \geq \left| \frac{(true\ value - computed\ value)}{computed\ value} \right|$$

were *value* is the value of the integrand at any point in the integration interval. Even if your integrand is accurate to 12 significant digits, you may wish to use a larger accuracy factor to reduce integration time since the larger the accuracy factor, the fewer points that must be sampled.

Uncertainty of Computation. When an integral is calculated, the approximation of the integral is returned to the X-register and the *uncertainty of computation* is returned to the Y-register. That is, the integral is approximated to a value of $x, \pm y$.

For example, the uncertainty of computation returned in the example above is 0.0219. Dividing by π gives 0.0070. That means the approximation of the integral is -0.2592 ± 0.0070 .

Using Integration in a Program

To calculate an integral in a running program, the program must:

1. Select a program using the PGMINT (*program to integrate*) function.
2. Store the constants (using [STO]).
3. Store the limits of integration and an accuracy factor.
4. Calculate the integral with the INTEG (*integrate*) function.

For example, the following program segment illustrates how these functions can be used to calculate an integral. In this example, the Bessel function is calculated again—this time using an *x*-value of 4.

* While integrals of functions with certain characteristics such as spikes or rapid oscillations might be calculated inaccurately, these functions are rare.

73 PGMINT "BSSL"	Selects the Bessel function program to be integrated. (Refer to the example on page 198.)
74 CLX	
75 STO "LLIM"	
76 PI	
77 STO "ULIM"	Stores the limits of integration, accuracy factor, and the constant X.
78 0.01	
79 STO "ACC"	
80 4	
81 STO "X"	
82 INTEG "T"	Calculates the integral with respect to the variable T. The result is returned to the X-register and the uncertainty is returned to the Y-register.
83 PI	
84 ÷	Divides by the constant outside the integral (π).
⋮	
⋮	

The program could go on to interpret or display the results using the approximation of the integral in the X-register and the uncertainty in the Y-register.

Matrix Operations

A matrix is a rectangular array of numbers. In general, a matrix of *order m × n* has the following form:

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & \dots & a_{1n} \\ a_{21} & & & \cdot \\ \cdot & & & \cdot \\ \cdot & & & \cdot \\ a_{m1} & a_{m2} & \dots & a_{mn} \end{bmatrix}$$

In this chapter you will learn how to:

- Create and fill a matrix.
- Do matrix arithmetic and use the built-in matrix functions.
- Solve a system of simultaneous linear equations.
- Manipulate the contents of a matrix by indexing it and then using the matrix utility functions.

Matrices in the HP-42S

Matrices are one of the four data types used by the HP-42S. As such, a matrix can be manipulated in the calculator just like any other data. The first two rows of the MATRIX menu contain many of the functions needed for working with matrices.

MATRIX	New matrix.
INV	Invert.
DET	Determinant.
TRAN	Transpose.
SIMQ	Simultaneous equations.
EDIT	Edit matrix in X-register.
▼	
DOT	Dot product.
CROSS	Cross product.
UVEC	Unit vector.
DIM	Dimension.
INDEX	Index.
EDITN	Edit named matrix.

Creating and Filling a Matrix in the X-Register

To create a matrix in the X-register:

1. Key in the dimensions of the matrix: **rows** **ENTER** **columns**. (The maximum size of a matrix is limited only by the amount of memory available.)
2. Press **MATRIX** **NEW** (*new matrix*).

To fill a matrix with data:

1. Press **EDIT** to activate the *Matrix Editor* on the matrix in the X-register.
2. Use **←**, **→**, **↑**, **↓**, and **→** to move to the element you want to enter, and then key in the number. Repeat this step for each element of the matrix. (The Matrix Editor is explained in more detail on page 211.)
3. Press **EXIT** to exit the Matrix Editor and return the edited matrix to the X-register.

Example. Create the following matrix:

$$\begin{bmatrix} 7 & -5 \\ 4 & 9 \end{bmatrix}$$

2 **ENTER**

y: 2.0000
x: 2.0000

MATRIX **NEW**

x: [2x2 Matrix]
NEW INV DET TRAN SIMQ EDIT

EDIT

1:1=0.0000
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

Fill the matrix rowwise. That is, start with the upper-left element and move left to right across each row.

7

1:1=7
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

→ 5 **+/−**

1:2=-5
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

→ 4

2:1=4
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

→ 9

2:2=9
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

Exit from the Editor to return the matrix to the X-register.

EXIT

x: [2x2 Matrix]
NEW INV DET TRAN SIMQ EDIT

Pressing the **SHOW** key when there is a matrix in the X-register displays the matrix descriptor and the first element.

SHOW (*hold down*)

[2x2 Matrix]
1:1=?

Store a copy of the matrix into the variable **MAT1** (refer to the note below).

STO **ENTER** **MAT1** **ENTER**

x: [2x2 Matrix]
NEW INV DET TRAN SIMO EDIT

Exit from the MATRIX menu.

EXIT

y: 0.0000
x: [2x2 Matrix]



Note

Because matrices can be used to hold large amounts of data, it's recommended that you store copies of matrices (and other important data) into variables and then recall the data as it's needed. This saves you the trouble of keying the data in again if you inadvertently lose the matrix off the top of the stack during other calculations or while editing another matrix.

Creating and Filling a Named Matrix

A named matrix (that is, a matrix stored in a variable) can be created and filled directly in the variable. That is, you don't have to create the matrix in the stack and then store it.

To create a named matrix:

1. Key in the dimensions of the matrix: **rows** **ENTER** **columns**.
2. Press **MATRIX** **DIM**.
3. Type the variable name for the new matrix: **ENTER** **name** **ENTER**. (If the variable already exists, the calculator redimensions it as the matrix you've specified.)

To edit a named matrix (without recalling it to the stack):

1. Press **EDITN** (*edit named matrix*).
2. Press a menu key to select the matrix you want to edit.

3. Use **←**, **↑**, **↓**, and **→** to move to the element you want to enter, and then key in the number. Repeat this step for each element of the matrix.

4. Press **EXIT** to exit the Matrix Editor.

Example. Create a variable named **MAT2** and fill it with the following data:

$$\begin{bmatrix} -5 & 10 & 14 \\ 17 & 5 & -11 \end{bmatrix}$$

Display the second row of the MATRIX menu.

MATRIX ▼

x: [2x2 Matrix]
DOT CROSS UVEC DIM INDEX EDITN

Create the matrix.

2 **ENTER** 3 **DIM** **ENTER** **MAT2**
ENTER

x: 3.0000
DOT CROSS UVEC DIM INDEX EDITN

Fill **MAT2** using the Matrix Editor.

EDITN **MAT2**

5 **+/-**

+ 10

+ 14

+ 17

+ 5

1:1=0.0000
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

1:1=-5_
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

1:2=10_
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

1:3=14_
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

2:1=17_
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

2:2=5_
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

→ 11 [+/-]

2:3=-11
 ← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

EXIT

x: -11.0000
 DOT CROSS UVEC DIM INDEX EDITN

Recall MAT1 and MAT2 and multiply them together.

RCL MAT1

x: [2x2 Matrix]
 DOT CROSS UVEC DIM INDEX EDITN

RCL MAT2

x: [2x3 Matrix]
 DOT CROSS UVEC DIM INDEX EDITN

x: [2x3 Matrix]
 DOT CROSS UVEC DIM INDEX EDITN

Use the Editor to view the resulting matrix.

▲ EDIT

1:1=-120.0000
 ← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

1:2=45.0000
 ← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

1:3=153.0000
 ← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

2:1=133.0000
 ← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

2:2=85.0000
 ← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

2:3=-43.0000
 ← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

Thus, $MAT1 \times MAT2$ is:

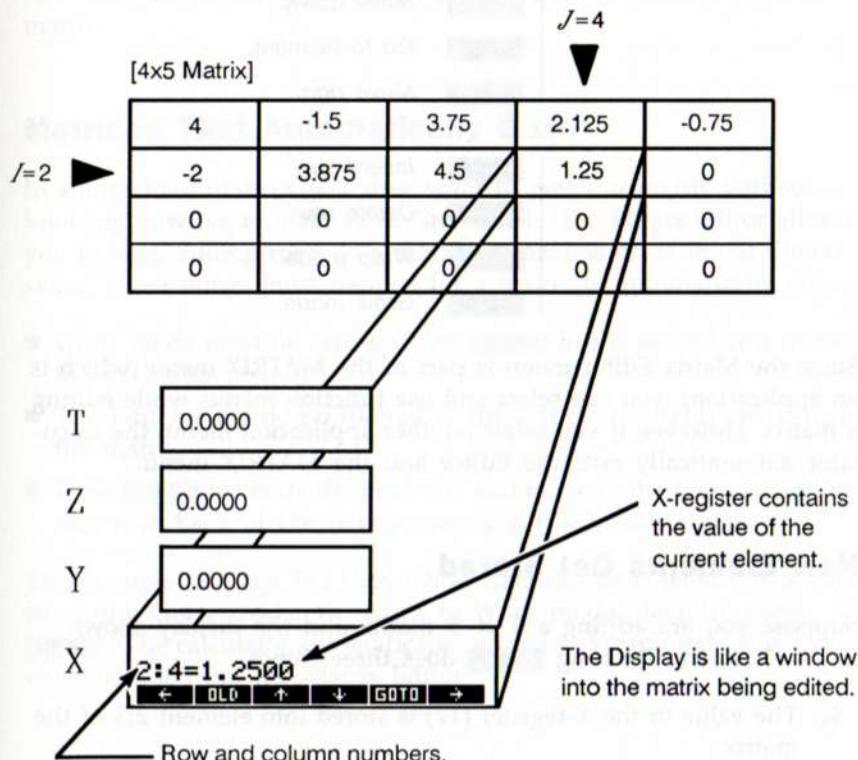
$$\begin{bmatrix} -120 & 45 & 153 \\ 133 & 85 & -43 \end{bmatrix}$$

EXIT

y: -11.0000
 x: [2x3 Matrix]

The Matrix Editor

The Matrix Editor enables you to enter, view, and change any element in a matrix. When you activate the Editor, it recalls the contents of the first element into the X-register. As you move around in the matrix, the display shows the element number and its contents. To change an element, simply key in or calculate the new value.



The calculator's stack is a companion to the Matrix Editor. As you move from element to element, the stack moves right along with you, which means you can do calculations at any time.

MATRIX	EDIT	
	+	Move left.
	OLD	Restore old value of element.
	↑	Move up.
	↓	Move down.
	GOTO	Go to element.
	→	Move right.
	▼	
	INSR	Insert row.
	DELR	Delete row.
	WRAP	Wrap mode.
	GROW	Grow mode.

Since the Matrix Editor menu is part of the MATRIX menu (which is an application), you can select and use function menus while editing a matrix. However, if you select another application menu, the calculator automatically exits the Editor and the MATRIX menu.

How Elements Get Stored

Suppose you are editing a 5×5 matrix and the display shows $2:3=17.0000$. Pressing \rightarrow does three things:

1. The value in the X-register (17) is stored into element 2:3 of the matrix.
2. The pointers are advanced to the next element (2:4).
3. The contents of element 2:4 are recalled to the X-register, *over-writing* the previous value (17).

This scheme allows you to use the Editor to view each element in a matrix without altering the data in the Y-, Z-, and T-registers.

The Editor allows you to recall any type of data into the X-register and do calculations. However, before you move to another element or exit from the Editor, the X-register must contain data that can be stored into the matrix element. A matrix cannot contain another matrix, a real matrix cannot contain a complex number, and a complex matrix cannot contain an Alpha string.

If the Matrix Editor displays **Invalid Type** when you press **EXIT**, the value in the X-register is not a valid element for the current matrix.

Matrices That Automatically Grow

In some circumstances you may want to create a matrix without knowing how big to make it. In *Grow* mode, the Matrix Editor allows you to keep adding rows to a matrix, regardless of its initial dimensions. Three things must happen for a matrix to automatically grow:

- Grow mode must be active. (Press **GROW** in the second row of the Matrix Editor menu.)
- The Editor must be positioned to the last (lower-right) element in the matrix.
- Press \rightarrow to create the new row and move to the first element in that row. Each of the new elements is filled with a zero.

The example on page 241 shows how data can be entered into a matrix using Grow mode. To return to Wrap mode (default), press **WRAP**. The calculator automatically returns to Wrap mode when you enter or exit from the Matrix Editor.

Restoring the Old Value

Pressing **OLD** recalls the contents of the current element into the X-register. This is useful when you lose track of a calculation or change an element by mistake. You can also recall the current element by executing the **RCLEL** (*recall element*) function.

The "old" value is the number that was in the element when you first moved there. It is not replaced until you move to another element or exit from the Editor.

Inserting and Deleting Rows

While editing a matrix, you can insert and delete rows using functions in the second row of the Matrix Editor menu.

To insert a row into a matrix:

1. Move to any element in the row that will follow the new row.
2. Press **INSR** (insert row).

To delete a row of a matrix:

1. Move to any element in the row you want to delete.
2. Press **DELR** (delete row). You cannot use the DELR function if the matrix has only one row.

Complex Matrices

Before you can enter complex numbers into a matrix, the entire matrix must be made complex.

Creating Complex Matrices

To create a new complex matrix:

1. Create a real matrix using the procedure on page 206.
2. Before you enter any data into the matrix, press **ENTER** to make a copy of the matrix.
3. Press **COMPLEX** to combine the two real matrices into a complex matrix. (For more information on the COMPLEX function, refer to page 91.)

Example. Create a new 3×4 complex matrix.

3 **ENTER** 4

Y: 3.0000
X: 4_

MATRIX **NEW**

X: [3x4 Matrix]
NEW INV DET TRAN SIMO EDIT

ENTER **COMPLEX**

EXIT

x: [3x4 Cpx Matrix]
NEW INV DET TRAN SIMO EDIT

To convert an existing matrix to complex:

1. Key in one of the following complex numbers:
 - 1 **ENTER** 0 **COMPLEX** if you want the existing numbers in the matrix to become the real parts of the complex numbers.
 - 0 **ENTER** 1 **COMPLEX** if you want the existing numbers in the matrix to become the imaginary parts of the complex numbers. (The calculator must be in Rectangular mode to enter this complex number.)
 - 0 **ENTER** **COMPLEX** if you don't want to save any of the data in the existing matrix.
2. Multiply the matrix by the complex number.

For example, to convert **MAT1** (created in the example on page 207) to complex (saving the current data as real parts), press 1 **ENTER** 0 **COMPLEX** **STO** **X** **MAT1**.

Converting a Complex Matrix to Real

Pressing **COMPLEX** converts the complex matrix in the X-register into two real matrices. The matrix containing the left-hand parts (x- or r-values) is left in the Y-register; the matrix containing the right-hand parts (y- or θ-values) is left in the X-register.

Filling a Complex Matrix

The Matrix Editor works with complex matrices just as it does for real matrices. When you're filling a matrix with data, key in complex numbers as described in chapter 6. If a number has a zero imaginary part, you can leave it off. (The calculator automatically converts the number to complex when it is stored into the matrix.)

Example. Calculate the determinant (**DET**) of the following complex matrix.

$$\begin{bmatrix} 10 + i16 & 4 + i9 \\ -4 & i17 \end{bmatrix}$$

Create a 2×2 real matrix.

MATRIX 2 **ENTER** **NEW**

x: [2x2 Matrix]
NEW INV DET TRAN SIMO EDIT

Make the matrix complex.

ENTER **COMPLEX**

x: [2x2 Cpx Matrix]
NEW INV DET TRAN SIMO EDIT

Now edit the matrix. (Be sure your calculator is in Rectangular mode by pressing **MODE** **RECT**.)

EDIT 10 **ENTER** 16 **COMPLEX**

1:1=10.0000 i16.0000
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

+ 4 **ENTER** 9 **COMPLEX**

1:2=4.0000 i9.0000
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

+ 4 **+/**

2:1=-4_
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

+ 0 **ENTER** 17 **COMPLEX**

2:2=0.0000 i17.0000
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

EXIT

x: [2x2 Cpx Matrix]
NEW INV DET TRAN SIMO EDIT

DET

x: -256.0000 i206.0000
NEW INV DET TRAN SIMO EDIT

EXIT

Redimensioning a Matrix

To redimension a named matrix:

1. Enter the new dimensions: **rows** **ENTER** **columns**.
2. Press **MATRIX** **DIM**. The calculator displays a variable catalog of existing matrices.
3. Select a matrix by pressing the corresponding menu key or type the variable name using the ALPHA menu.

If the matrix does not exist, it is created using the dimensions and variable name that you've specified.

What Happens When a Matrix Is Redimensioned. Matrices are stored internally as a single sequence of elements. The elements fill the matrix *rowwise*.

When you redimension a matrix, the rowwise order of the elements is not changed. If you increase the size of the matrix, new elements are added at the end of the sequence. Similarly, if you reduce the number of elements in a matrix, the last elements (and the data stored in those elements) are lost.

[2x5 Matrix] redimensioned to [4x3 Matrix]

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \\ 6 & 7 & 8 & 9 & 10 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 7 & 8 & 9 \\ 10 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

You can recall the current dimensions of a matrix by recalling it into the X-register and then executing the **DIM?** (*dimensions?*) function. **DIM?** returns the number of rows to the Y-register, number of columns to the X-register, and saves a copy of the matrix in the LAST X register.

Matrix Arithmetic

Calculating with matrices is like calculating with numbers. You can manipulate a matrix on the stack using the same techniques you've already learned for working with numbers (chapter 2).

Scalar Arithmetic. Scalar arithmetic is defined as a matrix and a single number (the scalar) being combined with an arithmetic operation ($+$, $-$, \times , or \div). The arithmetic takes place on each element in the matrix.

Example: Scalar Arithmetic in the Stack. Recall the matrix *MAT1* (created in the first example in this chapter) and multiply it by 3.5. (Every element in *MAT1* is multiplied by 3.5.)

```
RCL MAT1
Y: -256.0000 i206.0000
X: [ 2x2 Matrix ]  

3.5
Y: [ 2x2 Matrix ]
X: 3.5_
 $\times$ 
Y: -256.0000 i206.0000
X: [ 2x2 Matrix ]
```

Example: Scalar Arithmetic Combined With Variable

Arithmetic. You can also use storage arithmetic to perform scalar arithmetic on a named matrix. Subtract 3 from each element in the matrix *MAT2*.

```
3 STO - MAT2
Y: [ 2x2 Matrix ]
X: 3.0000
```

Matrix Arithmetic Using One-Number Functions. Nearly all the one-number functions work on a matrix. For example, if you press $\boxed{\text{SQR}}$ when there is a matrix in the X-register, each element in the matrix is squared. To make a matrix negative (change the sign of each element), press $\boxed{+/-}$.

Matrix Arithmetic Using Two-Number Functions. You can add, subtract, multiply, and divide matrices using $+$, $-$, \times , and \div . If either matrix is complex, the result is also complex.

Function	Inputs	Result
Addition ($+$) or Subtraction ($-$)	Y: $[m \times n \text{ Matrix}]$ X: $[m \times n \text{ Matrix}]$	X: $[m \times n \text{ Matrix}]$
Multiplication (\times)	Y: $[m \times n \text{ Matrix}]$ X: $[n \times p \text{ Matrix}]$	X: $[m \times p \text{ Matrix}]$
Division (\div)*	Y: $[m \times n \text{ Matrix}]$ X: $[m \times m \text{ Matrix}]$	X: $[m \times n \text{ Matrix}]$

* Matrix division is defined as multiplying the numerator by the inverse of the denominator. Therefore, the X-register must contain a nonsingular (invertible) matrix.

Matrix Functions

Inverting a Matrix. Execute the INV function ($\boxed{\text{MATRIX}}$ $\boxed{\text{INV}}$) to calculate the inverse of a square ($n \times n$) matrix in the X-register. A matrix multiplied by its inverse produces the *identity matrix* (a square matrix with 1's on the diagonal and 0's elsewhere).

Transposing a Matrix. Execute the TRANS function ($\boxed{\text{MATRIX}}$ $\boxed{\text{TRAN}}$) to transpose a matrix in the X-register. The *transpose* of a matrix is obtained by *flipping* the matrix so that the rows become columns and the columns become rows.

Determinant. Execute the DET function ($\boxed{\text{MATRIX}}$ $\boxed{\text{DET}}$) to calculate the determinant of a square matrix in the X-register.

Frobenius Norm. Execute the FNRM (*Frobenius norm*) function to calculate the Frobenius (Euclidean) norm of a matrix in the X-register. The Frobenius norm is defined as the square root of the sum of the squares of the absolute values of all of the elements.

Row Norm. Execute the RNRM (*row norm*) function to calculate the row norm (infinity norm) of a matrix in the X-register. The row norm is the maximum value (over all rows) of the sums of the absolute values of all elements in a row. For a vector, the row norm is the largest absolute value of any of the elements.

Row Sum. Execute the RSUM (*row sum*) function to calculate the sum of each row of a matrix in the X-register. RSUM returns an $m \times 1$ matrix filled with the row sums of the $m \times n$ input matrix.

Vector Operations

A single-row or single-column matrix is called a *vector*. The HP-42S performs the following vector operations.

Dot Product. Execute the DOT function (**MATRIX** **▼** **DOT**) to calculate the dot product of the matrices in the X- and Y-registers. The dot product is defined as the sum of the products of the corresponding elements in two matrices.

Cross Product. Execute the CROSS function (**MATRIX** **▼** **CROSS**) to calculate the cross product of the vectors in the X- and Y-registers. The two vectors must be two- or three-element matrices or complex numbers.

Unit Vector. Execute the UVEC function (**MATRIX** **▼** **UVEC**) to calculate the unit vector of the matrix in the X-register. That is, each element in the vector is adjusted so that the magnitude (Frobenius norm) is equal to 1.

Simultaneous Linear Equations

A system of linear equations

$$a_{11}x_1 + a_{12}x_2 = b_1$$

$$a_{21}x_1 + a_{22}x_2 = b_2$$

can be represented by the matrix equation $AX = B$, where

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} \end{bmatrix}, \quad X = \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{bmatrix}, \quad B = \begin{bmatrix} b_1 \\ b_2 \end{bmatrix}.$$

A is the *coefficient matrix*, *B* is the *constant or column matrix*, and *X* is the *solution matrix*.

To solve a system of simultaneous equations:

- Specify the number of unknowns: Press **MATRIX** **SIMQ** *nn*. The calculator automatically creates (if necessary) and dimensions three matrices: *MATA*, *MATB*, and *MATX*.
- Enter the coefficient matrix: press **MATA**.
- Enter the constant matrix: press **MATB**.
- Calculate the solution matrix: press **MATX**. (For a large system of equations, this calculation can take several seconds to complete.)

To work another problem with the same number of unknowns, go to step 2 or 3. For a problem with a different number of unknowns, press **EXIT** and start over with step 1.

Example. Find the three unknowns in this system of simultaneous equations:

$$\begin{aligned} 7x + 2y - z &= 15 \\ x - y + 15z &= 112 \\ -9x + 2z &= -22 \end{aligned}$$

The coefficient matrix is:

$$\begin{bmatrix} 7 & 2 & -1 \\ 1 & -1 & 15 \\ -9 & 0 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$$

Create the appropriate matrices for three equations and three unknowns.

MATRIX **SIMQ** 03

x: 3.0000
MATA MATB MATX

Fill in the coefficient matrix.

MATA

7 \downarrow 2 \downarrow 1 \div

1:1=0.0000
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

\downarrow 1 \downarrow 1 \div 15

1:3=-1
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

\downarrow 9 \div \downarrow \downarrow 2

2:3=15
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

EXIT

3:3=2
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

x: 2.0000
MATA MATE MATH

Fill the constant matrix.

MATB

15 \downarrow 112 \downarrow 22 \div

1:1=0.0000
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

EXIT

3:1=-22
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

x: -22.0000
MATA MATE MATH

Calculate and view the solution matrix.

MATX

1:1=4.0000
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

The first unknown, x , is 4.

↑

2:1=-3.0000
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

The second unknown, y , is -3.

↓

3:1=7.0000
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

And the third unknown, z , is 7.

EXIT

x: 7.0000
MATA MATE MATH

Matrix Utility Functions (Indexing)

The functions in this section work on the currently *indexed* matrix. By indexing a matrix you can directly access and manipulate any element in a named matrix.

To index a matrix:

1. Press **MATRIX** **INDEX**.
2. Specify a named matrix by pressing the corresponding menu key or typing the variable name with the ALPHA menu.

You can also index a matrix by editing it. After exiting the Matrix Editor, the matrix is no longer indexed.

Controlling the Index Pointers

Indexing a matrix establishes row and column pointers (I and J). These are the same pointers used by the Matrix Editor to identify the current element. When you index a matrix, the pointers are set to the first element. That is, $I = 1$ and $J = 1$. (Note that any operation that changes the dimensions of the indexed matrix also returns the index pointers to element 1:1.)

You can increment or decrement either pointer using the first four functions in the following table. If you attempt to move a pointer past the edge of a matrix (that is, outside its dimensions), the pointers automatically wrap around to the first element in the next column or row (or last element in the previous column or row).

To set the index pointers to a particular element, enter the pointer values into the X- and Y-registers (column and row, respectively), and then execute the STOIJ (*store IJ*) function.

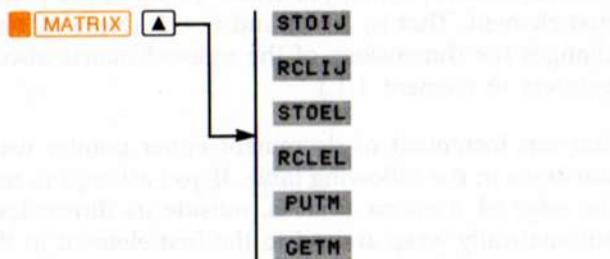
To recall the current pointer values to the X- and Y-registers, execute the RCLIJ (*recall IJ*) function.

Functions for Controlling the Index Pointers

Function	Description
I+	Increments the row pointer by one (down).*
I-	Decrements the row pointer by one (up).*
J+	Increments the column pointer by one (right).* If the calculator is in Grow mode, and the pointers are at the last element in the matrix, executing J+ creates a new row at the end of the matrix.
J-	Decrements the column pointer by one (left).*
STOIJ	Sets the index pointers to the numbers specified in the X- and Y-registers (x = column number; y = row number).
RCLIJ	Recalls the current values of the index pointers to the X- and Y-registers (x = column number; y = row number). If the pointers are both equal to zero, then there is currently no indexed matrix.

* Flags 76 and 77 are updated accordingly, indicating if a wrap has occurred. Refer to appendix C.

The third row of the MATRIX menu contains six of the most often used indexing functions.



Storing and Recalling Matrix Elements

The STOEL (*store element*) and RCLEL (*recall element*) functions are used to store and recall values in the indexed matrix. These functions do not alter the index pointers.

Function	Description
STOEL	Stores a copy of the value in the X-register into the indexed matrix at the current element, a_{ij} .
RCLEL	Recalls a copy of the current element, a_{ij} , into the X-register.

Programmable Matrix Editor Functions

Functions in the Matrix Editor menu (except **GOTO**) are programmable and work on the indexed matrix just as they do while using the Editor manually. For example, if you execute **←** (move left), **↑** (move up), **↓** (move down), or **→** (move right), then:

1. The value in the X-register is stored into the indexed matrix at the current element.
2. The row and column pointers (*I* and *J*) are advanced to the next element—left, up, down, or right. (If the calculator is in Grow mode and the function is **→**, the matrix is enlarged by one complete row and the pointers are advanced to the first element in the new row.)
3. The value stored in the current element is recalled to the X-register, overwriting the previous value in the X-register.

The INSR, DELR, WRAP, and GROW functions (in the second row of the Editor menu) are also programmable. Refer to pages 212 through 214.

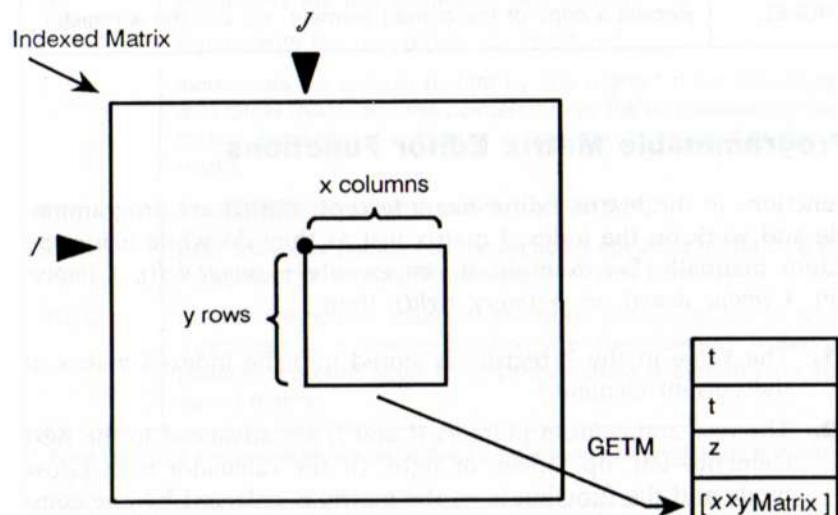
Swapping Rows

The R<>R (*row swap row*) function swaps the contents of two rows in the currently indexed matrix. Key the two row numbers into the X- and Y-registers, and then execute R<>R.

Submatrices

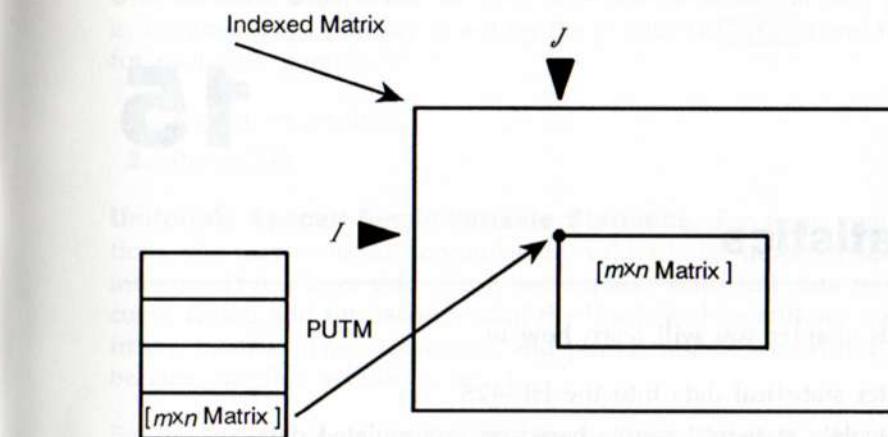
To get a submatrix from the indexed matrix:

1. Move the index pointers to the first element of the submatrix.
2. Enter the dimensions of the submatrix: number of rows in the Y-register and number of columns in the X-register.
3. Execute the GETM (get matrix) function (). GETM recalls the submatrix to the X-register.



To put a submatrix into the indexed matrix:

1. Move the index pointers to the element where you want the first element of the submatrix to go.
2. Execute the PUTM (put matrix) function (). PUTM copies the matrix in the X-register, element for element, into the indexed matrix beginning at the current element.



Special Matrices in the HP-42S

In addition to the matrix variables that you create, there are several that are automatically created.

The Storage Registers (REGS)

The data storage registers are actually a special $m \times n$ matrix in calculator memory (where SIZE = $m \times n$). The name REGS is reserved for the storage registers matrix (and can only be used to store a matrix).

Matrices for Simultaneous Equations

The matrices MATA, MATB, and MATX are created (and redimensioned if necessary) whenever you execute **SIMQ**. The data stored in these three matrices remains until you work another problem or clear the variables.

Statistics

In this chapter you will learn how to:

- Enter statistical data into the HP-42S.
- Calculate statistical results based on accumulated data.
- Use statistical data stored in a matrix.
- Fit a curve to the data you've entered using one of four models.
- Forecast future values based on a curve fitted to your data.

Entering Statistical Data

Statistical data is saved with the $\Sigma+$ (summation plus) key, which accumulates data into a block of storage registers containing *summation coefficients*. Executing $\Sigma+$ adds two values to the statistical data: an *x*-value (from the X-register) and a *y*-value (from the Y-register). The number of accumulated data points, *n*, is returned to the X-register.

Clearing Statistical Data. Before you begin accumulating a new set of data, press (*clear statistics*) to clear data in the summation registers.

Two-Variable Statistics. To enter two-variable statistical data (*x*- and *y*-values):

1. Key in the *y*-value, and then press .
2. Key in the *x*-value.
3. Press $\Sigma+$.

Repeat these steps for each data pair in the data set.

One-Variable Statistics. To enter one-variable statistical data (that is, *x*-values only), first key in a 0 for the *y*-value (0) and then, for each data point:

1. Key in an *x*-value.
2. Press $\Sigma+$.

Uniformly Spaced Single-Variable Statistics. For some applications, you may want the accumulated *y*-values to be uniformly spaced integers. This allows you to use one-variable statistical data to do curve fitting and forecasting using the linear and logarithmic curve-fitting models. (The exponential and power models are invalid because the first *y*-value is zero.)

For the *first* *x*-value, press 0 *x-value* $\Sigma+$. For each subsequent *x*-value:

1. Press to lift *n* into the Y-register.
2. Key in the *x*-value.
3. Press $\Sigma+$.

Example: Using Statistics. Below is a chart of maximum and minimum monthly winter (October–March) rainfall values in Corvallis, Oregon. Accumulate the values into the statistics registers.

	Oct.	Nov.	Dec.	Jan.	Feb.	Mar.
Y Maximum (inches of rain)	9.70	18.28	14.47	15.51	15.23	11.70
X Minimum (inches of rain)	0.10	0.22	2.33	1.99	0.12	0.43

Start by clearing any statistical data that may have been previously stored in the summation registers.

Y: 0.0000
X: 0.0000

Enter the first data pair (remember, *y*-value first).

9.7 [ENTER] .1 [Σ+]

Y: 9.7000
X: 1.0000

Notice that the number in the Y-register did not move when you pressed [Σ+]. The *x*-value (0.10) was saved in LAST X and replaced in the X-register with *n*, the number of accumulations made so far (1).

Enter the remaining data.

18.28 [ENTER] .22 [Σ+]

Y: 18.2800
X: 2.0000

14.47 [ENTER] 2.33 [Σ+]

Y: 14.4700
X: 3.0000

15.51 [ENTER] 1.99 [Σ+]

Y: 15.5100
X: 4.0000

15.23 [ENTER] .12 [Σ+]

Y: 15.2300
X: 5.0000

11.7 [ENTER] .43 [Σ+]

Y: 11.7000
X: 6.0000

Now, calculate the average monthly minimum and maximum rainfall.

[STAT] MEAN

X: 0.8650

[Σ+] SUM MEAN WMN SDEV CFIT

The average minimum monthly rainfall is 0.865 inches (average of the *x*-values).

[x₁y]

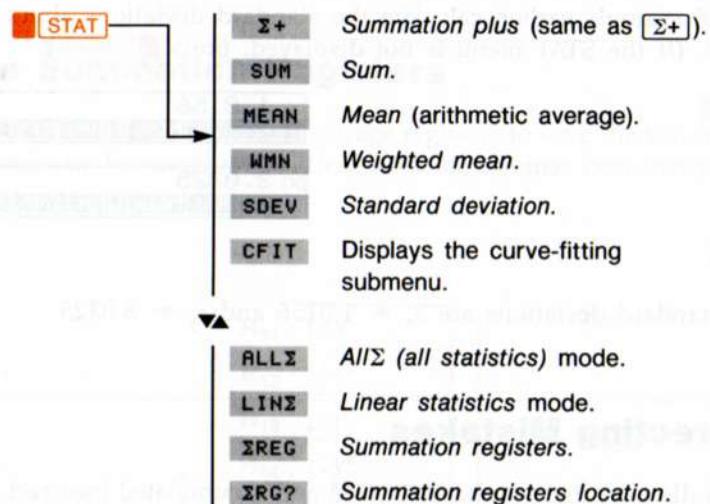
X: 14.1483

[Σ+] SUM MEAN WMN SDEV CFIT

The average maximum monthly rainfall is 14.1483 inches (average of the *y*-values).

Statistical Functions

The SUM, MEAN, WMEAN, and SDEV functions (in the STAT menu) allow you to calculate results from statistical data you've entered.



Sums

The SUM function returns the sum of accumulated *x*- and *y*-values into the X- and Y-registers, respectively.

Mean

As shown in the rainfall example above, the MEAN function returns the arithmetic mean (average) of the *x*- and *y*-values that have been stored with [Σ+]. The mean of *x* is returned to the X-register and the mean of *y* is returned to the Y-register.

Weighted Mean

The WMEAN function ([STAT] WMN) calculates the mean of *x*-values weighted by the *y*-values ($\Sigma xy \div \Sigma y$).

Standard Deviation

The SDEV (standard deviation) function computes the sample standard deviations,* s_x and s_y , of the data stored with $\Sigma+$ and places them in the X- and Y-registers, respectively.

Example: Calculating Standard Deviations. If you worked the rainfall example earlier, calculate the standard deviations about the means. (If the STAT menu is not displayed, press $\boxed{\text{STAT}}$.)

SDEV

x: 1.0156
 $\Sigma+$ SUM MEAN WMN SDEV CFIT

x_{xy}

x: 3.0325
 $\Sigma+$ SUM MEAN WMN SDEV CFIT

EXIT

The standard deviations are $s_x = 1.0156$ and $s_y = 3.0325$.

Correcting Mistakes

If you discover that you have entered and accumulated incorrect data points, you can correct the mistake by using $\boxed{\Sigma-}$ (summation minus).

Errors are corrected by reentering *both* the x - and y -values, pressing $\boxed{\Sigma-}$, and then entering the correct data. Even if only one value of an (x,y) data pair is incorrect, you must delete and reenter *both* values.

If the incorrect data point or pair is the most recent one entered and $\Sigma+$ has just been pressed, you can execute $\boxed{\text{LASTx}}$ $\boxed{\Sigma-}$ to remove the incorrect data. Otherwise:

1. Reenter the *incorrect* data pair into the X- and Y-registers.

2. Press $\boxed{\Sigma-}$. This function acts similarly to $\Sigma+$ except that the results are subtracted from (rather than added to) the summation coefficients. The number of data pairs, n , is decremented by one.
3. Enter the correct data values: y -value $\boxed{\text{ENTER}}$ x -value.
4. Press $\Sigma+$.

The Summation Registers

The calculator uses a block of storage registers to save the summation coefficients. The current statistical mode determines how many coefficients are saved.

All Σ mode	R ₁₁	Σx
	R ₁₂	Σx^2
	R ₁₃	Σy
	R ₁₄	Σy^2
	R ₁₅	Σxy
	R ₁₆	n
	R ₁₇	$\Sigma \ln x$
	R ₁₈	$\Sigma (\ln x)^2$
	R ₁₉	$\Sigma \ln y$
	R ₂₀	$\Sigma (\ln y)^2$
	R ₂₁	$\Sigma \ln x \ln y$
	R ₂₂	$\Sigma x \ln y$
	R ₂₃	$\Sigma y \ln x$

Linear mode*

* The SDEV function calculates the *sample standard deviation*, which assumes the data is a sampling of a larger, complete set of data. If your data constitutes the entire population of data, the *true population standard deviation* can be computed by calculating the mean of the original data, adding the mean to the statistical data using $\Sigma+$, and then executing SDEV.

* These are the same six coefficients used for statistics on the HP-41 family of calculators. Before running an HP-41 program that uses statistical functions, you may need to select Linear mode to assure proper execution of the program.

To select AllΣ mode: Press **STAT** **ALLΣ**. In AllΣ mode (the default), the calculator saves 13 summation coefficients. This allows you to do curve fitting and forecasting using four curve models (explained later in this chapter).

To select Linear mode: Press **STAT** **LINΣ**. In Linear mode, the calculator saves only six summation coefficients. This is the minimum set of values needed to do curve fitting and forecasting using the linear model (linear regression).

Changing the Location of the Summation Registers. By default, the first summation register is R_{11} . However, you can change the location of the summation registers with the **ΣREG** (*summation registers*) function. Press **STAT** **ΣREG nn**; where *nn* is the number of the first register.

For example, to relocate the statistical registers to R_07 , press **STAT** **ΣREG 07**.



Note

The **ΣREG** function does not move any data; it only identifies which registers are used to accumulate the summation coefficients. If you want to move the location of the summation registers, do it *before* entering any data.

The **ΣREG?** (*summation registers location*) function returns the register number of the first summation register. To execute the **ΣREG?** function, press **STAT** **ΣRG?**.

Nonexistent Summation Registers. After setting the number of summation registers (6 or 13), it is possible to reduce the SIZE such that one or more of the summation registers no longer exists. Statistical functions that directly access the summation registers will not operate unless *all* of the summation registers exist.

Example: Viewing the Summation Coefficients. George, owner of the Fish On Cafe, kept a record of Winter Steelhead fish caught by his customers in the nearby Wilson River. Enter the data below and then edit the storage registers to view the summation coefficients.

Weight of Fish (lbs.) (x-values)	Quantity (y-values)
6	8
7	12
8	24
9	23
10	15
11	9

Select AllΣ mode and then clear the summation registers.

STAT **ALLΣ** **EXIT**

CLEAR **CLΣ**

8 **ENTER** 6 **Σ+**

Y: 8.0000
x: 1.0000

12 **ENTER** 7 **Σ+**

Y: 12.0000
x: 2.0000

24 **ENTER** 8 **Σ+**

Y: 24.0000
x: 3.0000

23 **ENTER** 9 **Σ+**

Y: 23.0000
x: 4.0000

15 **ENTER** 10 **Σ+**

Y: 15.0000
x: 5.0000

9 **ENTER** 11 **Σ+**

Y: 9.0000
x: 6.0000

Unless you've changed the location of the summation registers, the first coefficient (Σx) is stored in R_{11} . Use the Matrix Editor to view the REGS matrix.

MATRIX **EDITN** **REGS**

1:1=0.0000
← OLD ↑ ↓ → GOTO ↵

Go to element 12:1 (which is R₁₁).

GOTO 12 ENTER 1 ENTER

12:1=51.0000
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

This is the Σx coefficient. Using $\leftarrow \rightarrow$, move through the registers and view all 13 coefficients. Compare them with the data above and the illustration on page 233.

→

→

→

→

→

→

→

→

→

→

13:1=451.0000
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

14:1=91.0000
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

15:1=1,619.0000
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

16:1=780.0000
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

17:1=6.0000
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

18:1=12.7148
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

19:1=27.2006
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

20:1=15.7832
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

21:1=42.5915
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

22:1=33.5635
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

→

→

EXIT EXIT

23:1=134.7648
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

24:1=194.2476
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

Y: 9.0000
X: 194.2476

Now, if you have a printer, print the summation coefficients using the PRΣ (print statistics) function. (If necessary, press **PRINT** **PON** to enable printing.)

PRINT PRΣ

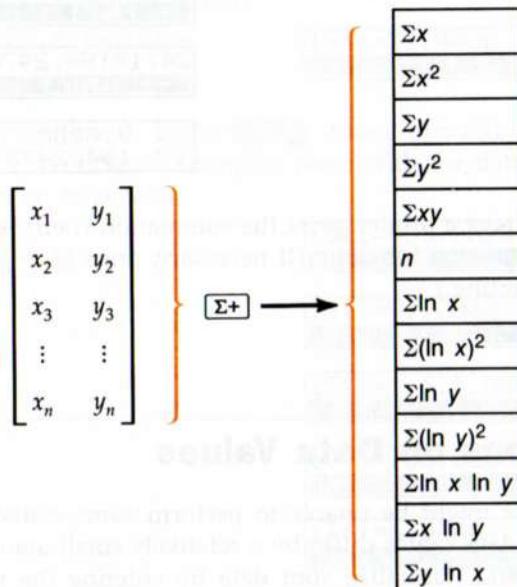
Limitations on Data Values

The calculator might be unable to perform some statistical calculations if your data values differ by a relatively small amount. To avoid this, you should normalize your data by entering the values as the difference from one value (such as the mean). This difference must then be added back to any calculations of the mean. For example, if your x -values were 776999, 777000, and 777001, you should enter the data as -1, 0, and 1; then add 777000 back to the relevant results.

If the **Σ+** function causes the contents of a register to exceed $\pm 9.9999999999 \times 10^{499}$, there is no overflow error; the overflowed register contains $\pm 9.9999999999 \times 10^{499}$.

Using Statistical Data Stored in a Matrix

You can enter statistical data into an $n \times 2$ matrix and then accumulate all of the data by pressing **Σ+** with the matrix in the X-register. The first column of the matrix contains the x -values, and the second column contains the y -values.



To use a matrix for statistical calculations:

1. Create a 1×2 named matrix. (Example: 1 **ENTER** 2 **MATRIX** **DIM** **ENTER** **ΣLIST** **ENTER**.)
2. Activate the Matrix Editor. (Example: **EDITN** **ΣLIST**.)
3. Use Grow mode (**GROW**) so the matrix will grow as you enter each data pair.
4. Enter the first data pair into the matrix: $x\text{-value} \rightarrow y\text{-value}$.
5. For each additional data pair:
 - a. Press \rightarrow to grow the matrix by one row.
 - b. Enter the data pair: $x\text{-value} \rightarrow y\text{-value}$.
6. Press **CLEAR** **CLΣ** to clear the summation registers.
7. Place the matrix in the X-register. (Example: **RCL** **ΣLIST**.)
8. Press **Σ+** to accumulate the data. The number of data pairs, n , is returned to the X-register and a copy of the matrix is saved in the LAST X register.

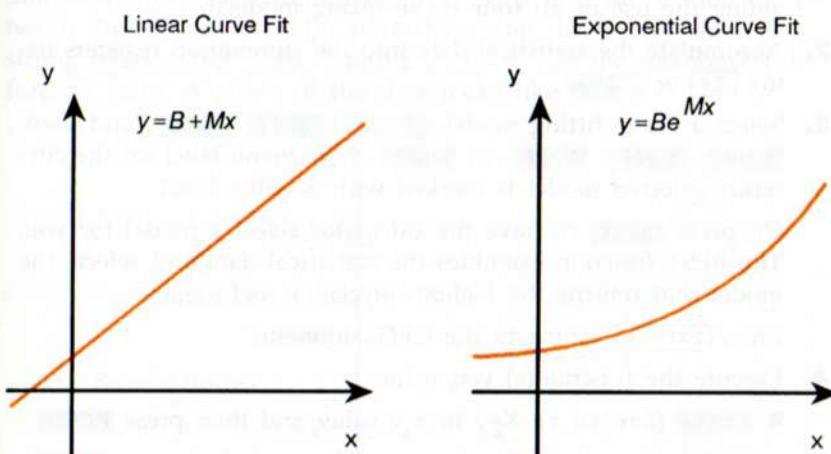
After the data is accumulated to the summation registers, you can work with it using any of the statistical functions.

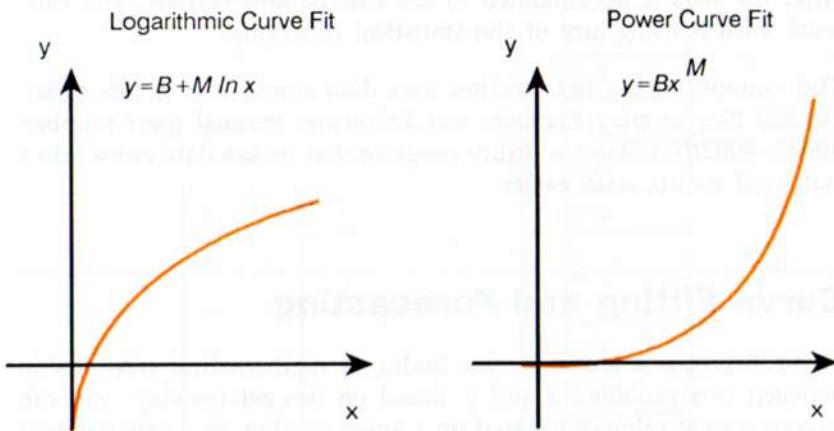
The example in the next section uses data stored in a matrix. The *HP-42S Programming Examples and Techniques* manual (part number 00042-90020) contains a utility program that makes data entry into a statistical matrix even easier.

Curve Fitting and Forecasting

Curve fitting is a technique for finding a mathematical relationship between two variables, x and y . Based on this relationship, you can *forecast* a new value of y based on a given x -value, or a new value of x based on a given y -value.

To establish the relationships between the x - and y -values, you can select one of the four curve-fitting *models*:





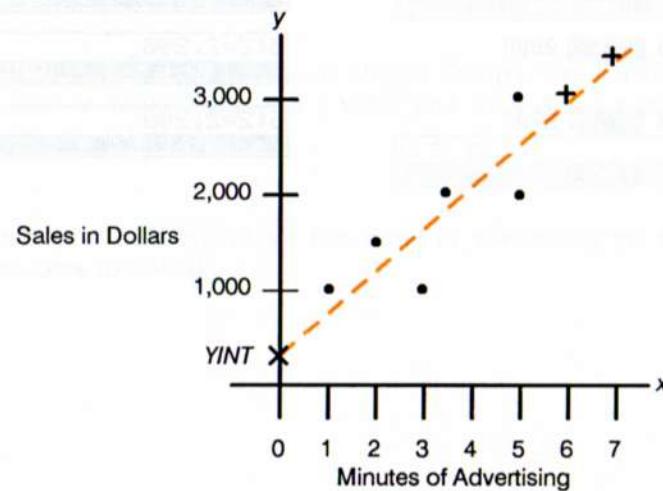
To do curve fitting and forecasting:

1. If necessary, press **STAT ▾ ALLΣ** to select AllΣ mode (enabling the use of all four curve-fitting models).
2. Accumulate the statistical data into the summation registers using **[Σ+]** or **[Σ+]**.
3. Select a curve-fitting model: **STAT CFIT MODL**, and then **LINF**, **LOGF**, **EXPF**, or **PWRF**. (The menu label for the currently selected model is marked with a white box.)
Or, press **BEST** to have the calculator select a model for you. The BEST function examines the statistical data and selects the model that returns the highest correlation coefficient.
Press **EXIT** to return to the CFIT submenu.
4. Execute the function(s) you want:
 - **FCSTX** (forecast x). Key in a y-value and then press **FCSTX**.
 - **FCSTY** (forecast y). Key in an x-value and then press **FCSTY**.
 - **SLOPE**. Calculates the slope of the linear transformation for the current model.
 - **YINT** (y-intercept). Calculates the y-intercept of the linear transformation for the current model.
 - **CORR** (correlation coefficient). Calculates a coefficient ($-1 \leq x \leq 1$) that indicates how closely the accumulated data matches the current curve-fitting model.

Example: Forecasting. Smith's Moss Garden advertises on a local radio station. For the past six weeks, the manager has kept records of the number of minutes of advertising purchased and the sales per week.

	Number of Minutes of Radio Advertising (x-values)	Dollar Sales (y-values)
Week 1	2	\$1,400
Week 2	1	\$ 920
Week 3	3	\$1,100
Week 4	5	\$2,265
Week 5	5	\$2,890
Week 6	4	\$2,200

Smith's wants to determine whether there is a linear relationship between the amount of radio advertising and the weekly sales. If a strong relationship exists, Smith's wants to use the relationship to forecast sales. A graph of the data looks like this:



Set the display format to FIX 2 (for dollars and cents).

DISP **FIX** 02

Y: 15.00
X: 9.00

Enter the data from the table above into a matrix named Σ LIST. Start with a 1×2 matrix.

1 **ENTER** **2** **MATRIX** **DIM**
ENTER Σ LIST **ENTER***

X: 2.00
DOT CROSS UVEC DIM INDEX EDITN

Activate the Editor on Σ LIST and select Grow mode so the matrix will grow to the necessary size as you enter the data.

EDITN Σ LIST **GROW**

1:1=0.00
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

Enter the data.

2 **1400**

1:2=1,400
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

+ 1 + 920

2:2=920
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

+ 3 + 1100

3:2=1,100
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

+ 5 + 2265

4:2=2,265
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

+ 5 + 2890

5:2=2,890
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

+ 4 + 2200

6:2=2,200
← OLD ↑ ↓ GOTO →

Be sure the calculator is in AllΣ mode and then clear the summation registers.

STAT **ALLΣ** **CLEAR** **CLΣ**

X: 2,200.00
ALL LINEΣ REGΣREG?

Accumulate the statistical data in Σ LIST.

RCL Σ LIST **Z+**

X: 6.00
Z+ SUM MEAN WHIN SDEV CFIT

Select the linear curve-fitting model.

CFIT **MODL** **LINF** **EXIT**

X: 6.00
FCSTX FCSTY SLOPE YINT CORR MODL

Calculate the correlation coefficient. This number indicates how well the data conforms to the linear model.

CORR

X: 0.90
FCSTX FCSTY SLOPE YINT CORR MODL

This correlation coefficient is acceptable to Smith's. Using the linear model, estimate what the level of sales would be if the business purchased 7 minutes of advertising time per week. (That is, enter an x -value of 7 and forecast a y -value.)

7 **FCSTY**

X: 3,357.38
FCSTX FCSTY SLOPE YINT CORR MODL

How many minutes of advertising should Smith's buy if it wants to attain sales of \$3,000? (Enter a y -value and forecast an x -value.)

3000 **FCSTX**

X: 6.16
FCSTX FCSTY SLOPE YINT CORR MODL

The business should buy about 6 minutes of advertising per week to increase sales to \$3000.

* To type Σ LIST, press **▼ MATH** **Z** **JKLM** **L** **FCHI** **I** **RSTUV**
S **RSTUV** **T**.

How Curve Fitting Works

The exponential, logarithmic, and power models are calculated using transformations that allow the data to be fitted by standard linear regression. The equations for these transformations appear in the table below. The logarithmic model requires positive x -values, the exponential model requires positive y -values, and the power curve requires positive x - and y -values.

Transformation Equations

Model	Transformation
Logarithmic	$y = b + m \ln x$
Exponential	$\ln y = \ln b + mx$
Power	$\ln y = \ln b + m \ln x$

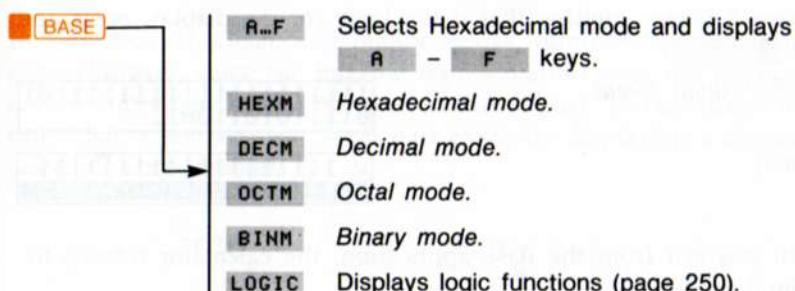
Base Operations

The HP-42S is capable of displaying numbers in four different bases: hexadecimal, decimal, octal, and binary. In this chapter you will learn how to:

- Select and use different number bases.
- Perform integer (base) arithmetic and use the logic functions.
- Use the programmable functions for selecting number bases.

Base Conversions

The BASE menu makes it easy to enter and display numbers in any of the four base modes.



Select the Base application. The white box indicates that the current mode is Decimal (base 10).

BASE

x: 0.0000
A..F HEXM DECM OCTM BINM LOGIC

Key in a number and then switch to Hexadecimal mode (base 16).

31806 **HEXM**

x: 7C3E
A...F HEXM DECM OCTM BINM LOGIC

Switch to Octal mode to display the number in base 8.

OCTM

x: 76076
A...F HEXM DECM OCTM BINM LOGIC

Now, key in the hexadecimal number A14D. Pressing **A...F** automatically selects Hexadecimal mode and displays a submenu for keying the digits A through F.

A...F

A14D

x: 7C3E
A B C D E F

x: A14D
A B C D E F

Display A14D₁₆ in Binary mode (base 2).

EXIT **BINM**

x: 1010000101001101
A...F HEXM DECM OCTM BINM LOGIC

Change the sign of the number (which is the 2's complement).

±

x: 111111111111111111111111...
A...F HEXM DECM OCTM BINM LOGIC

To view a binary number that is too large for the display, press and hold **SHOW**.

SHOW (hold down)

11111111111111111111111101
01111010110011

(release)

x: 111111111111111111111111...
A...F HEXM DECM OCTM BINM LOGIC

When you exit from the Base application, the calculator returns to Decimal mode.

EXIT

y: 31,896.0000
x: -41,293.0000

Keying In Numbers of Different Bases. The current base mode determines which digit keys can be used to key in numbers:

- In Hexadecimal mode use the **0** – **9** and **A** – **F** keys (press **A...F** to select the A...F menu).
- In Decimal mode use the **0** – **9** keys.
- In Octal mode use the **0** – **7** keys.
- In Binary mode use the **0** and **1** keys.

The calculator will not allow you to key in nondecimal numbers that exceed the 36-bit word length. Refer to "Range of Numbers" below.

Base Arithmetic. The Base application redefines the arithmetic keys (**+**, **-**, **×**, **÷**, and **±**) to their corresponding integer arithmetic functions. For example, if you press **+**, the calculator executes the BASE+ function instead of the normal addition function. Refer to "Integer Arithmetic" later in this chapter.

The Representation of Numbers

Base modes change the way real numbers are keyed in and displayed. Internally, however, real numbers are stored in decimal form regardless of the base mode.

In Hexadecimal, Octal, and Binary modes, numbers appear as integers. However, since the internal representation does not change, each number may have a nonzero fractional part. The calculator indicates that a nonzero fractional part exists by displaying a decimal point after the integer.

7C3E

↑
This number does
not have a fractional
part internally.

7C3E.

↑
This number does
have a fractional part
internally.

Negative Numbers

The left-most (most significant or "highest") bit of a number's binary representation is the sign bit; it is set (1) for negative numbers. If there are leading zeros (not displayed), then the sign bit is 0 (positive). A negative number is the 2's complement of its positive binary number.

Showing Numbers

The **SHOW** key can be used in the Base application to:

- Display a hexadecimal, decimal, or octal number in full-precision decimal form.
 - Display all 36 bits of a binary number.

Range of Numbers

The 36-bit word size determines the range of numbers that can be displayed in Hexadecimal, Octal, and Binary modes.

Range of Numbers for Base Conversions

The calculator does not allow you to key in a *nondecimal* number outside this range. For example, if you attempt to key in a 10-digit hexadecimal number, digit entry halts after the ninth digit.

Numbers Too Big To Display. Nondecimal numbers outside the 36-bit range are displayed as `<Too Big>`. Don't mistake `<Too Big>` for an error message—it's merely the calculator's way of displaying a number that is too big to display in the current number base.

Integer Arithmetic

There are five functions for doing 36-bit integer arithmetic. These functions use only the integer portion of their operands and return only integer results. For example, if you add the numbers 15.7832 and 10.4859 using the BASE+ function, the result is 25.0000 because the fraction portion of each operand is ignored.

36-Bit Arithmetic Functions

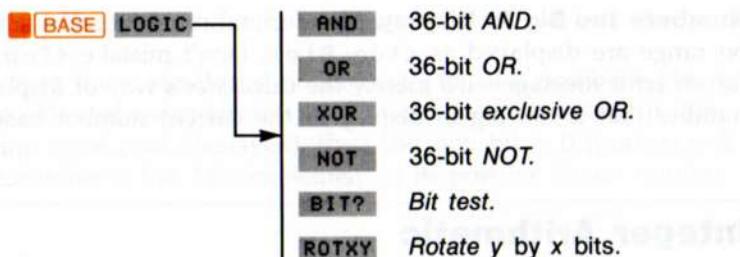
Function	Description
BASE +	Integer addition.
BASE -	Integer subtraction.
BASE ×	Integer multiplication.
BASE ÷	Integer division.
BASE +/-	2's complement.

Note: When the BASE menu is displayed, these functions are automatically assigned to the $[+]$, $[-]$, $[\times]$, $[+/-]$, and $[\sqrt{-}]$ keys, respectively.

The calculator displays **Out of Range** if the result produced by any of these operations is greater than the 36-bit word size. If flag 24 (*range ignore*) is set, the calculator substitutes the maximum 36-bit number and does not report an error.

The Logic Functions

Pressing **LOGIC** in the BASE menu displays a submenu containing six logical functions. Like the integer arithmetic functions, the logic functions use only the integer portion of a number and return only integers as results.



The Boolean Logic Functions. The AND, OR, and XOR functions are two-number functions. That is, they take two numbers (from the X- and Y-registers) and return a result to the X-register.

The NOT function returns the 36-bit logical NOT of the number in the X-register.

Bit Test. To test the x^{th} bit of the number in the Y-register, execute the BIT? function. Bits are numbered from 0 (the least significant bit) through 35 (the most significant bit). For example, the bits in this binary number* are numbered as shown:

10100111101101110101101001000011101
 ↑ ↑
 Bit number 35 Bit number 0

If BIT? is executed from the keyboard, the calculator displays Yes or No indicating whether the specified bit is set.

In a running program, the BIT? function follows the do-if-true rule—if the specified bit is set (1), the next program line is executed; if the bit is not set (0), the next program line is skipped.

Rotating a 36-Bit Number. To rotate a 36-bit number by a specified number of bits, enter the number into the Y-register, the number of bits in the X-register, and then execute the ROTXY function. If the number of bits specified in the X-register is positive, the rotation is to the right. If the number of bits is negative, the rotation is to the left.

ROTY returns the rotated number to the X-register and drops the stack.

Programming Information

To select a base mode in a program, execute HEXM, DECM, OCTM, or BINM. If a program stops after executing one of these instructions, the BASE menu is displayed and real numbers are input and displayed using the base mode that was selected. To exit the BASE menu, the program can then execute the EXITALL function.

You can also use the BASE menu for entering the base conversion and logic functions into a program. However, numbers entered directly into program lines are always entered and displayed in decimal form.

Example: A Program That Uses Base Operations. The following program prompts for an octal number and a binary number, adds them together, and displays the sum in Hexadecimal mode.

<pre> 01 LBL "0BH" 02 OCTM 03 INPUT 01 04 BINM 05 INPUT 02 06 RCL 01 07 BASE+ 08 HEXM 09 VIEW ST X 10 EXITALL 11 END </pre>	Global label. Selects Octal mode and inputs the first number into R ₀₁ . Selects Binary mode and inputs the second number into R ₀₂ . Recalls a copy of the first number and adds to the second. Selects Hexadecimal mode, displays the result, and exits the BASE menu.
---	--

* The decimal equivalent of this number is -23,698,157,027.

Part 4

Appendices and Reference

Page	254	A: Assistance, Batteries, and Service
	267	B: Managing Calculator Memory
	273	C: Flags
	283	D: Messages
	288	E: Character Table
	292	Menu Maps
	310	Operation Index
	336	Subject Index

including a detailed guide to memory and how it's used by the calculator. Appendix A contains information about the memory card and how to use it with your TI-Nspire CX CAS handheld. Appendix B contains information about the TI-Nspire CX CAS handheld's built-in calculator, including how to manage memory.

Appendix C contains information about the TI-Nspire CX CAS handheld's flags, which are variables that can be set to either true or false.

Appendix D contains a list of error messages that you might see when using the TI-Nspire CX CAS handheld.

Appendix E contains a table of characters and their corresponding codes.

Appendix F contains a list of menu maps, which are lists of the menus and submenus available on the TI-Nspire CX CAS handheld. Appendix G contains a list of the TI-Nspire CX CAS handheld's operation index, which is a list of all the commands available on the handheld.

Appendix H contains a list of the TI-Nspire CX CAS handheld's subject index, which is a list of all the topics covered in the book.

Appendix I contains a list of the TI-Nspire CX CAS handheld's menu maps, which are lists of the menus and submenus available on the handheld.

Appendix J contains a list of the TI-Nspire CX CAS handheld's operation index, which is a list of all the commands available on the handheld.

Appendix K contains a list of the TI-Nspire CX CAS handheld's subject index, which is a list of all the topics covered in the book.

Appendix L contains a list of the TI-Nspire CX CAS handheld's menu maps, which are lists of the menus and submenus available on the handheld.

Appendix M contains a list of the TI-Nspire CX CAS handheld's operation index, which is a list of all the commands available on the handheld.

Appendix N contains a list of the TI-Nspire CX CAS handheld's subject index, which is a list of all the topics covered in the book.

Appendix O contains a list of the TI-Nspire CX CAS handheld's menu maps, which are lists of the menus and submenus available on the handheld.

Appendix P contains a list of the TI-Nspire CX CAS handheld's operation index, which is a list of all the commands available on the handheld.

Appendix Q contains a list of the TI-Nspire CX CAS handheld's subject index, which is a list of all the topics covered in the book.

Appendix R contains a list of the TI-Nspire CX CAS handheld's menu maps, which are lists of the menus and submenus available on the handheld.

Appendix S contains a list of the TI-Nspire CX CAS handheld's operation index, which is a list of all the commands available on the handheld.

Appendix T contains a list of the TI-Nspire CX CAS handheld's subject index, which is a list of all the topics covered in the book.

Appendix U contains a list of the TI-Nspire CX CAS handheld's menu maps, which are lists of the menus and submenus available on the handheld.

Appendix V contains a list of the TI-Nspire CX CAS handheld's operation index, which is a list of all the commands available on the handheld.

Appendix W contains a list of the TI-Nspire CX CAS handheld's subject index, which is a list of all the topics covered in the book.

Appendix X contains a list of the TI-Nspire CX CAS handheld's menu maps, which are lists of the menus and submenus available on the handheld.

Appendix Y contains a list of the TI-Nspire CX CAS handheld's operation index, which is a list of all the commands available on the handheld.

Appendix Z contains a list of the TI-Nspire CX CAS handheld's subject index, which is a list of all the topics covered in the book.

A

Assistance, Batteries, and Service

Obtaining Help in Operating the Calculator

Hewlett-Packard is committed to providing the owners of HP calculators with ongoing support. You can obtain answers to your questions about using the calculator from our Calculator Support department.

You should read the next section, "Answers to Common Questions," before contacting us. Past experience has shown that many of our customers have similar questions about our products. If you don't find an answer to your question, you can contact us using the address or phone number listed on the inside back cover.

Answers to Common Questions

Q: I'm not sure if the calculator is malfunctioning or if I'm doing something incorrectly. How can I determine if the calculator is operating properly?

A: Refer to page 261, which describes the diagnostic self-test.

Q: My numbers contain commas as decimal points. How do I restore the periods?

A: Press **DISP RDSE**. Also check the status of flag 29 (page 276).

Q: How do I change the number of decimal places the calculator displays?

A: The procedure is described under "Number of Decimal Places" on page 34.

Q: When I take the sine of π in radians mode, I get a small number ($-2.06761537357 \times 10^{-13}$) instead of zero. Why?

A: The value returned is correct. While π has an infinite number of significant digits, the HP-42S uses the best possible 12-digit approximation of π . Given the inherent limitation of a finite number of input digits, the trigonometric functions provide the most accurate 12-digit results possible.

Q: When I calculate $\sqrt[3]{-27}$ ($27 \sqrt[3]{ }$ **ENTER** $3 \sqrt[3]{ }$ **y^x**) I get a complex number (1.5000 i2.5981). Why?

A: The value returned is correct. There are three possible answers, the HP-42S returns the root in the first quadrant. If you switch to Polar mode (**MODES POLAR**) you'll see that the number is $3 \angle 60^\circ$.

To calculate the real-number cube root, use the following program:

```
01 LBL "CROOT"
02 SIGN
03 LASTX
04 3
05 1/X
06 Yx
07 ABS
08 X
09 END
```

Q: My calculator doesn't stop to display answers. They appear briefly and then computation resumes. How can I get the program to stop long enough to read the results?

A: Set flag 21 (**FLAGS SF 21**). Flags 21 and 55 are used in conjunction to control the display and printer output. For more information on these flags, refer to pages 131 and 132.

Q: How do I clear all or portions of memory?

A: Press **CLEAR** to display the CLEAR menu then execute the function you need. Refer to page 26.

Q: What does an "E" in a number mean? (For example, $2.51E-13$.)

A: Exponent of ten (such as 2.51×10^{-13}). Refer to "Exponents of Ten" on page 27.

Q: The calculator has displayed the message Insufficient Memory. What should I do?

A: There is not enough memory to complete the operation that you attempted. Refer to appendix B, "Managing Calculator Memory."

Q: Why isn't my calculator printing when I want it to?

A: Printing is disabled. Press **PRINT** ▲ **PON** to enable printing. Also refer to the owner's manual for the printer to see that you are positioning the calculator properly in front of the printer.

Q: The calculator is operating slowly, and the  annunciator is blinking. Why?

A: The calculator is trace printing. Press **PRINT** ▲ **MAN** to turn tracing off (page 102).

Q: The beeper is not working. Why?

A: The beeper has been disabled by executing the QUIET function or by clearing flag 26. Set the flag by pressing **MODES** ▼ **QUIET** or **FLAGS** **SF** 26.

Q: How do I key in consecutive numbers in a program?

A: Key in the first number, press **ENTER** ◀, and then key in the second number (page 118).

Q: What is indirect addressing?

A: It is used when a parameter for a particular function is stored in a variable or register. That variable or register is addressed (indirectly) by the function (page 74).

Q: Why can't I get to the end of the matrix I'm editing? It appears to be much larger than when I created it.

A: The Matrix Editor is in Grow mode. In the Matrix Editor menu, press ▼ **WRAP** to disable Grow mode (page 213).

Power and Batteries

The calculator is shipped with three button-cell batteries. Battery life depends on how the calculator is used. Printing and long calculations require much more power than other operations.

Use only fresh button-cell batteries. Do not use rechargeable batteries.

Low-Power Indications

When the low-battery annunciator () comes on, replace the batteries as soon as possible.

If you continue to use the calculator after the battery annunciator comes on, power can eventually drop to a level at which the calculator stops powering the display and keyboard. The calculator will require fresh batteries before it can be turned back on. When you turn the calculator on after fresh batteries have been installed, the calculator displays **Machine Reset** if your stored data is intact. If data has been lost, the calculator displays **Memory Clear**.

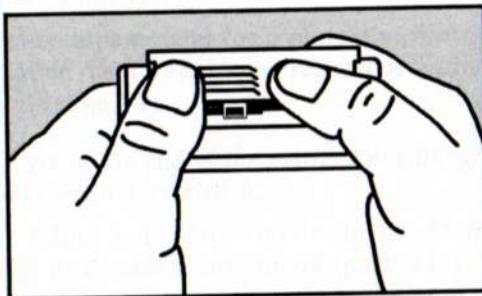


To conserve battery power, printing does not function when the battery annunciator is on. Printing might halt during a printing operation due to a borderline low-battery condition. The calculator can detect that there is insufficient power for printing before the battery annunciator comes on.

Installing Batteries

Once the batteries are removed, you must replace the batteries within one minute to prevent loss of Continuous Memory. Therefore, you should have the new batteries readily at hand before removing the batteries. Also, you must make sure the calculator is off during the entire process of changing batteries.

1. Have three fresh button-cell batteries at hand.
2. Make sure the calculator is off. **Do not press **EXIT** again until the entire procedure for changing batteries is completed. Changing batteries with the calculator on will erase the contents of Continuous Memory.**
3. Hold the calculator as shown. To remove the battery-compartment door, press down and outward on it until it slides off (away from the center).



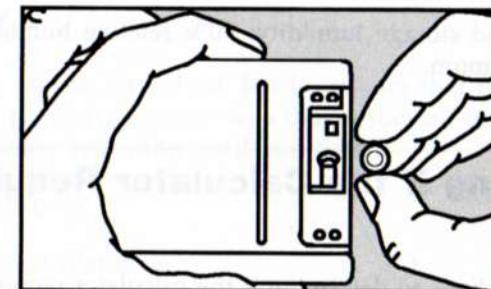
4. Turn the calculator over and shake the batteries out.



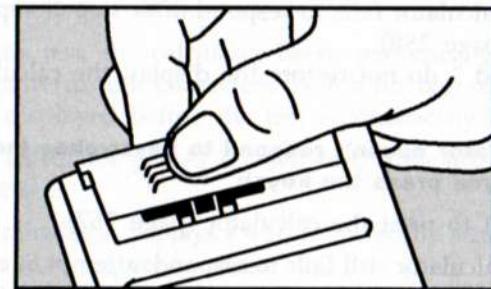
Warning

Do not mutilate, puncture, or dispose of batteries in fire. The batteries can burst or explode, releasing hazardous chemicals.

5. Hold the calculator as shown and stack the batteries, one at a time, in the battery compartment. Orient the batteries according to the diagram inside the battery compartment. Be sure the raised and flat ends match the diagram.



6. Insert the tab of the battery-compartment door into the slot in the calculator case, as shown.



Now turn the calculator back on. If it does not function, you might have taken too long to change the batteries or inadvertently turned the calculator on while the batteries were out. Remove the batteries again and lightly press a coin against both battery contacts in the calculator for a few seconds. Put the batteries back in and turn the calculator on. It should display **Memory Clear**.

Environmental Limits

To maintain product reliability, observe the following limits:

- Operating temperature: 0° to 45°C (32° to 113°F).
- Storage temperature: -20° to 65°C (-4° to 149°F).
- Operating and storage humidity: 90% relative humidity at 40°C (104°F) maximum.

Determining if the Calculator Requires Service

Use these guidelines to determine if the calculator requires service. If it does, read "If the Calculator Requires Service" on page 263.

■ If the calculator won't turn on (nothing is visible in the display):

1. Attempt to reset the calculator (page 267).
2. If the calculator fails to respond after step 1, replace the batteries (page 258).

If steps 1 and 2 do not restore the display, the calculator requires service.

■ If the calculator doesn't respond to keystrokes (nothing happens when you press the keys):

1. Attempt to reset the calculator (page 267).
2. If the calculator still fails to respond, attempt to clear all memory (page 268). This will erase all the information you've stored.

If steps 1 and 2 do not restore calculator function, the calculator requires service.

■ If the calculator responds to keystrokes but you suspect that it is malfunctioning:

1. Do the self-test (described below). If the calculator fails the self-test, it requires service.
2. If the calculator passes the self-test, it is quite likely you've made a mistake in operating the calculator. Try rereading portions of the manual, and check "Answers to Common Questions" on page 254.
3. Contact the Calculator Support department. The address and phone number are listed on the inside back cover.

Confirming Calculator Operation—the Self-Test

If the display can be turned on, but it appears that the calculator is not operating properly, you can do a diagnostic self-test. The self-test runs continuously, repeating until you halt it.

To run the self-test:

1. Turn the calculator on.
2. If you have the optional infrared printer, turn it on. Certain diagnostic information is printed during the test.
3. To start the self-test, hold down **EXIT** while you press the **LN** key.* Once the self-test has begun, do not press any keys until you are ready to halt the test.
4. During the test, the calculator beeps periodically and displays various patterns and characters. Watch for one of two messages that are displayed before the test automatically repeats:
 - If the calculator passes the self-test, the calculator displays **OK-42S-E**.
 - If the calculator displays **FAIL** followed by a number, the calculator may require service.

* Pressing the **LOG** key starts another self-test that is used at the factory. If you accidentally start this self-test, you can stop it by holding down the **EXIT** key while you press the **LN** key.

5. To halt the self-test, hold down **EXIT** while you press the **fx** key. The calculator displays **Machine Reset**. If you press any other key instead, the test halts and the calculator displays a **FAIL** message. *This message results from an incorrect key being pressed and does not mean that the calculator requires service.*
6. If the calculator failed the self-test, repeat steps 3 through 5 to verify the results. If you do not have a printer, write down the messages that are displayed in step 5 above.

Limited One-Year Warranty

What Is Covered

The calculator (except for the batteries, or damage caused by the batteries) is warranted by Hewlett-Packard against defects in materials and workmanship for one year from the date of original purchase. If you sell your unit or give it as a gift, the warranty is automatically transferred to the new owner and remains in effect for the original one-year period. During the warranty period, we will repair or, at our option, replace at no charge a product that proves to be defective, provided you return the product, shipping prepaid, to a Hewlett-Packard service center.

This warranty gives you specific legal rights, and you may also have other rights that vary from state to state, province to province, or country to country.

What Is Not Covered

Batteries, and damage caused by the batteries, are not covered by the Hewlett-Packard warranty. Check with the battery manufacturer about battery and battery leakage warranties.

This warranty does not apply if the product has been damaged by accident or misuse or as the result of service or modification by other than an authorized Hewlett-Packard service center.

No other express warranty is given. The repair or replacement of a product is your exclusive remedy. **ANY OTHER IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS IS LIMITED TO THE ONE-YEAR DURATION OF THIS WRITTEN WARRANTY.** Some states, provinces, or countries do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts, so the above limitation may not apply to you. **IN NO EVENT SHALL HEWLETT-PACKARD COMPANY BE LIABLE FOR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES.** Some states, provinces, or countries do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so the above limitation or exclusion may not apply to you.

Products are sold on the basis of specifications applicable at the time of manufacture. Hewlett-Packard shall have no obligation to modify or update products once sold.

Consumer Transactions in the United Kingdom

This warranty shall not apply to consumer transactions and shall not affect the statutory rights of a consumer. In relation to such transactions, the rights and obligations of Seller and Buyer shall be determined by statute.

If the Calculator Requires Service

Hewlett-Packard maintains service centers in many countries. These centers will service a calculator whether it is under warranty or not. There is a charge for service after the warranty period. Calculators normally are serviced and reshipped within five working days of receipt.

Obtaining Service

- *In the United States:* Send the calculator to the Calculator Service Center listed on the inside back cover.

- *In Europe:* Contact your HP sales office or dealer or HP's European headquarters for the location of the nearest service center. *Do not ship the calculator for service without first contacting a Hewlett-Packard office.*

Hewlett-Packard S.A.
150, Route du Nant-d'Avril
P.O. Box
CH 1217 Meyrin 2
Geneva, Switzerland
Telephone: (022) 82 81 11

- *In other countries:* Contact your HP sales office or dealer or write to the U.S. Calculator Service Center (listed on the inside back cover) for the location of other service centers. If local service is unavailable, you can ship the calculator to the U.S. Calculator Service Center for repair.

All shipping, reimportation arrangements, and customs costs are your responsibility.

Service Charge

There is a standard repair charge for out-of-warranty service. The Calculator Service Center (listed on the inside back cover) can tell you how much this charge is. The full charge is subject to the customer's local sales or value-added tax wherever applicable.

Calculator products damaged by accident or misuse are not covered by the fixed service charges. In these cases, charges are individually determined based on time and material.

Shipping Instructions

If your calculator requires service, ship it to the nearest authorized service center or collection point. Be sure to:

- Include your return address and description of the problem.
- Include proof of purchase date if the warranty has not expired.

- Include a purchase order, check, or credit card number plus expiration date (VISA or MasterCard) to cover the standard repair charge.
- Ship the calculator in adequate protective packaging to prevent damage. Such damage is not covered by the warranty, so we recommend that you insure the shipment.
- Pay the shipping charges for delivery to the Hewlett-Packard service center, whether or not the calculator is under warranty.

Warranty on Service

Service is warranted against defects in materials and workmanship for 90 days from the date of service.

Service Agreements

In the U.S., a support agreement is available for repair and service. Refer to the form included with the manual. For additional information, contact the Calculator Service Center (see the inside back cover).

Regulatory Information

U.S.A. The HP-42S generates and uses radio frequency energy and may interfere with radio and television reception. The calculator complies with the limits for a Class B computing device as specified in Subpart J of Part 15 of FCC Rules, which provide reasonable protection against such interference in a residential installation. In the unlikely event that there is interference to radio or television reception (which can be determined by turning the HP-42S off and on or by removing the batteries), try:

- Reorienting the receiving antenna.
- Relocating the calculator with respect to the receiver.

For more information, consult your dealer, an experienced radio/television technician, or the following booklet, prepared by the Federal Communications Commission: *How to Identify and Resolve Radio-TV Interference Problems*. This booklet is available from the U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C. 20402, Stock Number 004-000-00345-4. At the first printing of this manual, the telephone number was (202) 783-3238.

European Declaration of Conformity (according to EN 45014)

Manufacturer's name: Hewlett-Packard Company
Manufacturer's address: Hewlett-Packard Co. Hewlett-Packard Co.
Corvallis Division Singapore (PTE) Ltd.
1000 NE Circle Blvd. 1150 Depot Road
Corvallis, OR 97330 Singapore 0410

declares that the following product

Product name: HP 42S
conforms to the following product specifications

EMC: CISPR 22 / EN55022 class B,
prEN55101-2, prEN55024-3
Safety: IEC 950 / EN60950

Quality Department
Hewlett-Packard Company
Corvallis Division

B

Managing Calculator Memory

This appendix describes how calculator memory is organized and the techniques used internally by the calculator to conserve memory. You do not need to read and understand this material to use your calculator. However, you may find the information useful. For example, you can write your programs to take advantage of the HP-42S memory management scheme.

Resetting the Calculator

If the calculator doesn't respond to keystrokes or is otherwise behaving unusually, attempt to reset it. Resetting the calculator resets many conditions to their default states (such as turning Program-entry mode off and exiting all menus). Refer to appendix C, "Flags," for a table of flag settings at machine reset.

To reset the calculator, hold down the **EXIT** key while you press the **■** key. Repeat this if necessary. The calculator displays **Machine Reset** to confirm that reset has occurred.

Clearing All Memory

There are two ways to clear calculator memory:

To clear all programs and data:

1. Press **CLEAR** **▼** **CLALL**.
2. Press **YES** to confirm or any other key to cancel.

To clear all programs and data and reset flags:

1. Press and hold [EXIT] (lower-left corner of the keyboard).
2. Press and hold [Σ^+] (upper-left corner of the keyboard).
3. Press and release [XEQ] (upper-right corner of the keyboard).
4. Release [Σ^+].
5. Release [EXIT]. The calculator displays **Memory Clear**.

Continuous Memory can inadvertently be erased if the calculator is dropped or if power is interrupted.

Reclaiming Memory

If you see the message **Insufficient Memory**, there is not enough memory to complete the operation that you attempted.

To determine the amount of memory available, press and hold [MEM] in the CATALOG menu. To reclaim memory—that is, increase the amount of available memory—do one or more of the following:

- Reduce the number of storage registers by using a smaller SIZE (page 64).
- Clear variables that you no longer need (page 62).
- Clear programs that you no longer need (page 119).
- Clear the stack (page 43).

How the HP-42S Conserves Memory

As described in chapter 3, the HP-42S uses several types of data. Because data types can range in size (from a real number up to a large complex matrix), a sophisticated operating system has been developed that makes it easy for you to manipulate data using a consistent set of RPN rules. The techniques presented in chapter 2 for using the stack apply to all types of data. For example, when you press [ENTER], the stack is lifted and the data in the X-register is copied into the Y-register.

What Happens When Data Is Copied

Whenever you make a copy of data (with operations such as [ENTER], [STO], and [RCL]), internally the calculator *does not* actually make a complete copy even though it appears to.

Example: Observing the Conservation of Memory. To demonstrate this principle of copying objects, clear the stack and create a 10×10 matrix named *TEST*.

Create the matrix using the DIM function.

10 [ENTER] [MATRIX] [DIM]
[ENTER] TEST [ENTER] [EXIT]
[CLEAR] CLST
Y: 10.0000
x: 10.0000
Y: 0.0000
x: 0.0000

View the amount of memory available. (Note: the memory available in your calculator will differ from the numbers shown in this example.)

[CATALOG] [MEM] (hold down) Available Memory:
6157 Bytes

Fill the stack with copies of *TEST*.

RCL TEST
[ENTER] [ENTER] [ENTER]
x: [10x10 Matrix]
FCN PGM REAL CPX MAT MEM
x: [10x10 Matrix]
FCN PGM REAL CPX MAT MEM

Now, there appear to be five complete matrices in the calculator: one stored in the variable *TEST* and four in the stack. But when you view the amount of memory available, you can see that making these “copies” did not use any additional memory.

[CATALOG] [MEM] (hold down) Available Memory:
6157 Bytes

Internally, the HP-42S does not make copies of data until it is used. Add 2 to the matrix.

2

x: [10x10 Matrix]
FNC PGM REAL CPX MXT MEM

View the amount of memory available now.

(hold down)

Available Memory:
5326 Bytes

The new copy required 831 additional bytes of memory ($6,157 - 5,326 = 831$).

Writing Memory-Efficient Programs

Use the Stack Efficiently. Review chapter 2 and remember the rules for RPN calculations. Many complicated mathematical expressions can be evaluated using only the stack. That is, you can often complete a calculation without using *additional* variables or storage registers. For example, refer to the "TVM" program on page 192.

Use Local Labels Whenever You Can. If you do a lot of programming, you can save a substantial amount of memory by using local labels whenever you can. Local labels only require 1 or 2 bytes each and branch instructions to local labels never require more than 3 bytes. What's more, the search for a local label is usually much faster than a search for a global label (page 148).

Global labels, on the other hand, require 4 bytes plus 1 byte for each character in the label. Each branch instruction to a global label (GTO and XEQ) requires 2 bytes plus 1 byte for each character in the label.

During Matrix Arithmetic. During some calculations with matrices, you can save memory by putting the smaller matrix or scalar in the X-register before executing a numeric function.

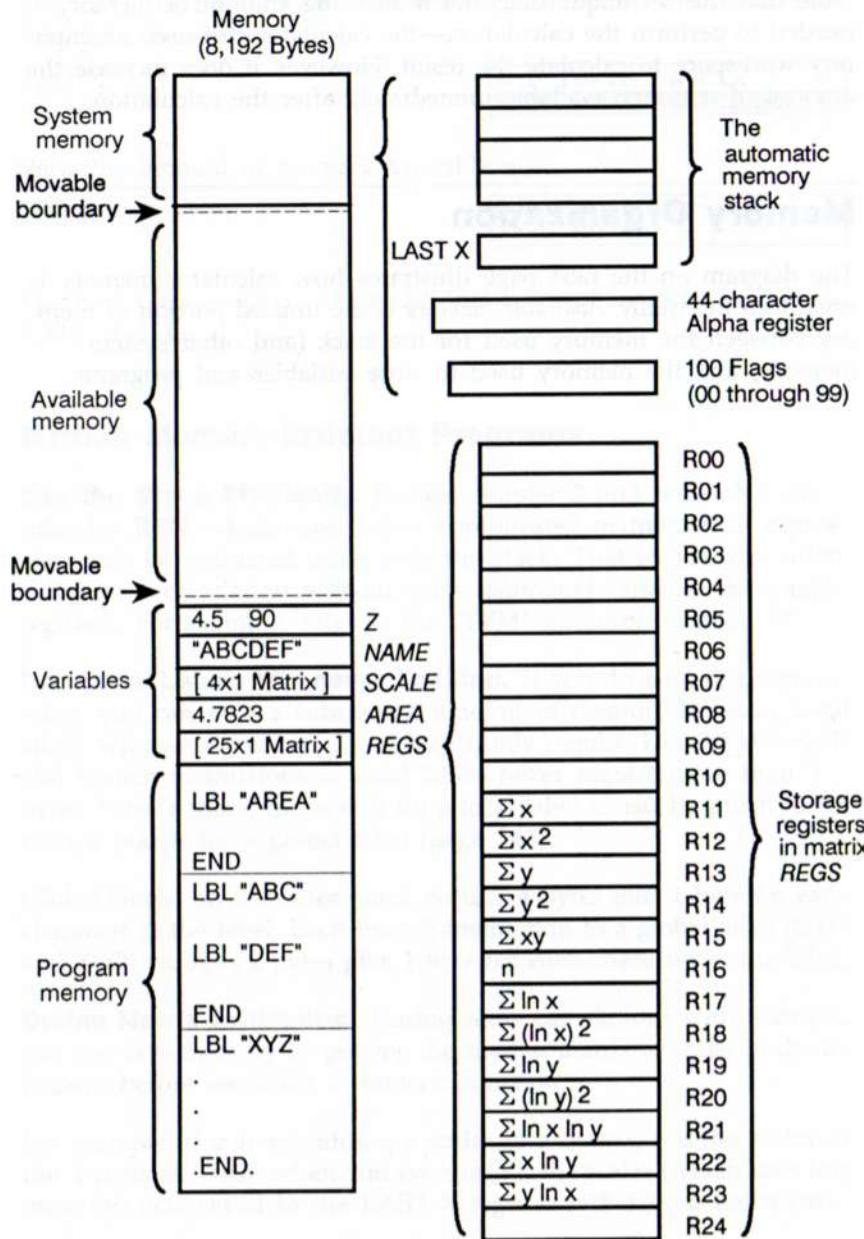
For example, if you are adding a scalar to a matrix, put the scalar in the X-register. Then, when you execute , the scalar (which uses less memory) gets saved in the LAST X register rather than the matrix.

Note that this technique does not reduce the amount of memory needed to perform the calculation—the calculator still uses a temporary workspace to calculate the result. However, it does increase the amount of memory available immediately after the calculation.

Memory Organization

The diagram on the next page illustrates how calculator memory is organized internally. *Available memory* is the unused portion of memory between the memory used for the stack (and other system memory) and the memory used to store variables and programs.





Flags

The HP-42S uses 100 flags (numbered 00–99) to keep track of various modes, settings, and conditions. A flag has only two states: *set* and *clear*. Flags are set, cleared, and tested using the functions in the FLAGS menu (page 41).

Flags that represent certain conditions may change in the course of operation. For example, when you press CUSTOM to select the CUSTOM menu, flag 27 is set. When you exit from the CUSTOM menu, flag 27 is cleared.

Flags not listed in this appendix are either used internally or are reserved for future use.

User Flags (00 Through 10 and 81 Through 99)

The 30 *user flags* can be used to represent anything you want. For example, the "TVM" program on page 192 uses flag 00. If flag 00 is set, the program assumes payments are made at the beginning of each month; if flag 00 is clear, payments are made at the end of each month.

Control Flags (11 Through 35)

Control flags are used by the HP-42S to represent certain operating conditions. Some conditions are controlled only by altering flags, while others are changed by executing functions.

Flag 11: Automatic Execution. Flag 11 (if set before the calculator is turned off) allows a program to run automatically when the HP-42S is turned on. If flag 11 is set when you turn the HP-42S on, flag 11 is cleared, and program execution begins at the current program line.

Flag 12: Double-Wide Printer Output. If flag 12 is set, all printer output is printed double-wide.

Flag 13: Lowercase Printer Output. If flag 13 is set, the letters A through Z are printed in lowercase.

Flags 15 and 16: Print Mode. This table shows how flags 15 and 16 represent the current print mode.

Flag 15	Flag 16	Print Mode
clear	clear	Manual
clear	set	Normal
set	clear or set	Trace

Flag 21: Printer Enable. Flag 21 allows your program to control how the functions VIEW and AVIEW are executed. For more information, refer to "Printing With VIEW and AVIEW" on page 132.

Flags 22 and 23: Data Input. These flags allow a program that prompts for input to determine the user's response. Flag 22 is set whenever numbers are keyed into the X-register. Flag 23 is set whenever characters are keyed into the Alpha register.

If you intend to test these flags to determine if input has been made, you should clear them before prompting for the input.

Flags 24 and 25: Error Ignore. Normally, an error condition halts program execution. These flags allow you to avoid unnecessary program halts and to use error conditions as a programming tool.

- If flag 24 is set, the HP-42S ignores *all* range errors. *Out of Range* normally results from any calculation (except statistical accumulations) that produces a number x such that $|x| > 9.9999999999 \times 10^{499}$. If flag 24 is set, $\pm 9.9999999999 \times 10^{499}$ is returned as an approximation to the correct answer and program execution continues. Once you set flag 24, it remains set until you explicitly clear it.

Flag 24 can also be used to ignore range errors produced by the 36-bit arithmetic functions (BASE+, BASE-, BASE \times , and BASE \div), substituting the largest 36-bit number for an approximation to the correct answer (pages 248 and 249).

You do not need to set flag 24 to prevent overflow errors when accumulating statistical data ($\Sigma+$) or using two-number functions on matrices. In these cases the calculator automatically returns $\pm 9.9999999999 \times 10^{499}$ when a result exceeds the range of the calculator.

- If flag 25 is set, the calculator ignores *only one* error of any kind and then clears flag 25. The instruction that caused the error is not executed.

If both flags 24 and 25 are set, *Out of Range* is handled by flag 24—flag 25 is *not* cleared. Note that if flag 25 is set and flag 24 is clear, *Out of Range* does *not* cause $\pm 9.9999999999 \times 10^{499}$ to be placed in the appropriate register.

You can detect an error by setting flag 25 just before an instruction and then testing the flag after the instruction to see if it has been cleared. (Generally, you should test *and clear* flag 25—you risk losing data if you choose to ignore unanticipated errors.) This enables a program to branch rather than to stop execution in case of an error.

Flag 26: Audio Enable. When flag 26 is set, the BEEP and TONE functions *will* produce audible tones. You can toggle flag 26 by executing the QUIET function in the MODES menu.

Flag 27: The CUSTOM Menu. Flag 27 is set whenever the CUSTOM menu is displayed. The status of flag 27 is not altered by turning the calculator off and on. Refer also to flag 72.

Flags 28 and 29: Display Punctuation. These flags control the use of periods and commas in numeric displays.

- If flag 28 is set (*default*), a period is used as the radix mark (to separate the integer portion of a number from the fractional part). If flag 28 is clear, a comma is used as the radix mark.
 - If flag 29 is set (*default*), groups of digits in large numbers are separated. If flag 29 is clear, no digit separators are used. The character used to separate digits is a comma if the radix is a period, and a period if the radix is a comma.
- If the display format is set to FIX 0 and flag 29 is clear, the integer portion of the number is displayed without any punctuation.

Flag 30: Stack Lift Disable. This flag is cleared by nearly all functions. The functions that set flag 30 are ENTER, CLX, $\Sigma+$, and $\Sigma-$. If stack lift is disabled (flag 30 set), the next number keyed or recalled into the X-register writes over the current contents of the X-register (pages 45 through 46).

Flags 34 and 35: AGRAPH Control. The status of these two flags determines how a graphics image is displayed by the AGRAPH function. When both flags are clear (*default*), the image is merged with the existing contents of the display (logical OR). Refer to the table on page 137.

System Flags (36 Through 80)

The HP-42S uses system flags to keep track of a number of options and conditions. You cannot directly alter system flags. You can, however, test system flags, which might be useful in programs to detect particular options and conditions.

Flags That Represent Options

Flags 36 Through 41: Display Format. These flags represent the current display format. The calculator reads flags 36 through 39 as a four-bit binary number that specifies the number of digits to display. For example, the default format calls for 4 digits (flag 37 set; flags 36, 38, and 39 clear). That is, 0100 (binary) = 4 (decimal).

36	37	38	39
0	1	0	0

Flags 40 and 41 are used to represent the display format (FIX, SCI, ENG, or ALL).

Flag 40	Flag 41	Display Format
Clear	Clear	SCI
Clear	Set	ENG
Set	Clear	FIX (<i>default</i>)
Set	Set	ALL

Flags 42 and 43: Angular Mode. The status of flags 42 and 43 determines the angular mode (Degrees, Radians, or Grads). If flag 42 is set (**GRAD** on), the calculator is in Grads mode. If flag 43 is set (**RAD** on), the calculator is in Radians mode. If both flags are clear (*default*), the calculator is in Degrees mode.

Flags 56 Through 59: Curve-Fitting Model. These flags are used to indicate the current curve-fitting model. Only one of these four flags can be set at a time.

Flag	Curve-Fitting Model
56	Linear (<i>default</i>)
57	Logarithmic
58	Exponential
59	Power

Flag 60: All Σ Mode. If flag 60 is set (All Σ mode), the calculator uses all 13 summation coefficients for statistical calculations. If flag 60 is clear (Linear mode), the calculator uses only the six coefficients needed for linear curve fitting.

Flag 66: Grow Mode. If flag 66 is set, a matrix automatically grows by one complete row if you execute the \rightarrow or $J+$ function while positioned at the last element in the matrix.

Flags 68 Through 71: Base Mode. If the current base mode is Decimal, all four of these flags are clear. In nondecimal modes, these flags are used as a four-bit number indicating the largest digit allowed in the current mode.

Base Mode	Flags 71 70 69 68	Largest Digit
Binary	0 0 0 1	1
Octal	0 1 1 1	7
Hexadecimal	1 1 1 1	F

Flag 72: Local Label Mode (CUSTOM). The calculator tests this flag before displaying the CUSTOM menu. (Refer to the menu maps on page 301). If flag 72 is set, the CUSTOM menu for executing local Alpha labels is displayed. If flag 72 is clear, the CUSTOM menu key assignments are displayed. Making a key assignment automatically clears flag 72.

To set flag 72, press **LCLBL** (*Local-label mode*). To clear flag 72, press **KEY** (*Key-assignment mode*).

Flag 73: Polar Mode. If flag 73 is set, the calculator displays complex numbers using polar notation.

Flag 74: Real-Result Only. If flag 74 is set, the calculator returns an error for functions that would turn a real-number input into a complex-number result (such as calculating the square root of a negative real number). Refer to page 169.

Flags That Represent Conditions

Flag 44: Continuous On. Flag 44 is set when the ON (*continuous on*) function is executed. The calculator automatically turns off after about 10 minutes of inactivity (no keys pressed) unless flag 44 is set.

Flag 45: Solving. Flag 45 is set only while the Solver is calculating a solution.

Flag 46: Integrating. Flag 46 is set only while the Integration applicaton is evaluating an integral.

Flag 47: Variable Menu. Flag 47 is only set when a variable menu is active (page 125).

Flag 48: Alpha Mode. Whenever the calculator is in Alpha mode (ALPHA menu and Alpha register displayed), flag 48 is set. You can control Alpha mode by executing AON (*Alpha on*; sets flag 48) and AOFF (*Alpha off*; clears flag 48).

Flag 49: Low Battery Power. Flag 49 is set and the annunciator is displayed when battery power is low. Refer to page 258 for information on replacing batteries.

Flags 50 and 51: Message. Flag 50 is set whenever a message is displayed. If the message uses both lines of the display, flag 51 is also set.

Flag 52: Program-Entry Mode. Whenever the calculator is in Program-entry mode, flag 52 is set.

Flag 53: INPUT. Flag 53 is set only while an INPUT is in progress (page 121). Note that the INPUT function cannot be executed from the keyboard.

Flag 55: Printer Existence. Executing the PRON (*printing on*) function enables printing by setting flags 21 and 55. Executing PROFF (*printing off*) disables printing and clears flags 21 and 55.

In general, flag 55 indicates if printing is *possible*. Flag 21 indicates if printing is *desired*.

Flags 61 Through 63: Invalid Models. These flags are used during entry of statistical data to identify which curve-fitting models are invalid.

Flag	Invalid Model (if set)
61	Logarithmic
62	Exponential
63	Power

Flag 65: Matrix Editor. Flag 65 is set if the Matrix Editor is in use.

Flag 75: Programmable Menu Selected. If flag 75 is set, the programmable menu (page 145) is selected. The MENU function sets flag 75.

Flags 76 and 77: Matrix Wrap. These flags are updated each time you execute any of the matrix functions that alter the row and column pointers.

- If the function causes the pointers to be wrapped from one edge of the matrix to the opposite edge (*edge wrap*), flag 76 is set. Otherwise the flag is cleared.
- If the function causes the pointers to be wrapped from the first element to the last or from the last element to the first (*end wrap*), then flag 77 is set. Otherwise, the flag is cleared.

Summary of HP-42S Flags

The following table lists all of the flags used by the HP-42S. *Status at Machine Reset* indicates if the flag is set or cleared when you reset the calculator. *Status at Memory Clear* indicates if the flag is set or cleared when you erase all of memory. An M indicates that the current status of the flag is *Maintained* (not changed). A ? indicates that the status of the flag depends on other factors.

Flag Number	Flag Name	Status at Machine Reset	Status at Memory Clear
00-10	User Flags	M	Clear
11	Automatic Execution	Clear	Clear
12	Print Double-Wide	M	Clear
13	Print Lowercase	M	Clear
14	Reserved	M	Clear
15-16	Print Mode	M	Clear
17-18	Reserved	M	Clear

Flag Number	Flag Name	Status at Machine Reset	Status at Memory Clear
19-20	General Use	M	Clear
21	Printer Enable	M	Clear
22	Numeric Data Input	Clear	Clear
23	Alpha Data Input	Clear	Clear
24	Range Error Ignore	Clear	Clear
25	Error Ignore	Clear	Clear
26	Audio Enable	M	Clear
27	CUSTOM Menu	Clear	Clear
28	Radix Mark (. or ,)	M	Clear
29	Digit Separators	M	Clear
30	Stack Lift Disable	Clear	Clear
31-33	Reserved	?	?
34-35	AGRAPH Control	M	Clear
36-39	Number of Digits	M	4 Digits*
40-41	Display Format	M	FIX*
42	Grads Mode	M	Clear
43	Radians Mode	M	Clear
44	Continuous On	Clear	Clear
45	Solving	Clear	Clear
46	Integrating	Clear	Clear
47	Variable Menu	Clear	Clear
48	Alpha Mode	Clear	Clear
49	Low Battery	?	?
50	Message	Set	Set
51	Two-Line Message	Clear	Clear
52	Program-Entry	Clear	Clear
53	INPUT	Clear	Clear

* Refer to the description on page 276.

Flag Number	Flag Name	Status at Machine Reset	Status at Memory Clear
54	Reserved	Clear	Clear
55	Printer Existence	M	Clear
56	Linear Curve-Fitting Model	M	Set
57	Logarithmic Curve-Fitting Model	M	Clear
58	Exponential Curve-Fitting Model	M	Clear
59	Power Curve-Fitting Model	M	Clear
60	AllΣ Mode (statistics)	M	Set
61	Logarithmic Model Invalid	M	Clear
62	Exponential Model Invalid	M	Clear
63	Power Model Invalid	M	Clear
64	Reserved	M	Clear
65	Matrix Editor	Clear	Clear
66	Grow Mode	Clear	Clear
67	Reserved	Clear	Clear
68–71	Base Mode	Clear	Clear
72	Local-Label Mode (CUSTOM)	M	Clear
73	Polar Mode	M	Clear
74	Real-Result Only	M	Clear
75	Programmable Menu Active	Clear	Clear
76	Edge Wrap	M	Clear
77	End Wrap	M	Clear
78–80	Reserved	M	Clear
81–99	User Flags	M	Clear

Messages

The HP-42S displays messages to provide information and to warn you when you attempt an invalid operation. The message disappears when you press a key. To clear the message without altering anything else, press **◀**.

Alpha Data Is Invalid

Attempted an operation using a variable, storage register, or stack register containing an Alpha string.

Bad Guess(es)

Guess(es) provided for the Solver are outside the domain of the function.

Batt Too Low To Print

The battery voltage is too low to power the calculator's infrared printer interface. Whenever the calculator displays this message, it also resets to Manual printing mode.

Constant?

The function returned the same value at every point sampled by the Solver.

Dimension Error

- Dimensions of two matrices are not compatible for matrix arithmetic.
- Attempted to calculate the determinant of a nonsquare matrix.
- Attempted to create a matrix with one or both dimensions less than or equal to zero.
- Attempted to move the index pointers beyond the dimensions of the indexed matrix.

Divide by 0

Attempted to divide by zero.

Extremum

Local minimum or maximum has been found by the Solver.

Global Span

Attempted to insert or delete a program line that would have left more than 3,584 bytes of program instructions between two global labels or a global label and an END.

Insufficient Memory

There is not enough memory to complete the attempted operation. In addition to the memory needed to complete the operation, the calculator always keeps some memory available as a system work space.

Integ(Integ)

Attempted to integrate a function while another integration was in progress.

Integrating

The calculator is calculating an integral (chapter 13).

Interrupted

A matrix operation has been interrupted by pressing [EXIT].

Invalid Data

Attempted a function using data outside the range of the function.

Invalid Forecast Model

The current statistical data is invalid or incomplete to use the selected curve-fitting model for forecasting.

Invalid Type

Data type does not match the type expected (real, complex, or matrix).

Label Not Found

Attempted an instruction that referenced a program label that does not exist.

Machine Reset

The calculator has been reset (page 267):

- All menus are exited.
- Program-entry mode is exited.
- All pending RTN locations are cleared.
- The display contrast is set to a middle setting.

Memory Clear

All of continuous memory has been cleared (page 268).

No

The proposition made by a test function executed from the keyboard is false. For example, the calculator displays No if you press **FLAGS FS? 03** when flag 03 is clear.

No Complex Variables

There are no variables in the complex-variable catalog.

No Matrix Variables

There are no variables in the matrix-variable catalog.

No Menu Variables

Attempted to display a variable menu with VARMENU, SOLVER, or f(x) using a global label that is not followed by MVAR (menu variable) instructions.

No Real Variables

There are no variables in the real-variable catalog.

No Variables

Attempted to execute a function that requires a variable name as a parameter and there are no variables currently stored in the calculator.

Nonexistent

- Attempted to use a variable that does not exist.
- Attempted a matrix utility function when there is no indexed matrix.

Out of Range

The result of the attempted operation would exceed the numeric range of the calculator. You can use flag 24 to ignore this error.

Printing Is Disabled

A print operation was attempted from the keyboard with printing disabled (flag 55 clear). To enable printing, press **PRINT** **PON**.

Restricted Operation

- Attempted to set or clear a flag in the range 36 through 80.
- Attempted to use a function from the keyboard that can only be used in programs.
- Attempted to enter a nonprogrammable function into a program.
- Attempted to store a number into REGS. The variable name REGS can only be used to store a matrix.
- Attempted to redimension, index, or clear the named matrix currently being edited.
- Attempted to execute the DEL (*delete*) function while not in Program-entry mode.
- Attempted to delete a row (DELR) in a matrix that has only one row.

Sign Reversal

An approximation to a solution has been found by the Solver but it may not be a normal solution.

Size Error

- Attempted to store or recall a storage register that does not exist.
- Attempted a statistical function when one or more of the summation registers do not exist.

Solve/Integ RTN Lost

The RTN (*return*) location for the Solver or Integration was lost. The calculator can remember up to eight pending return locations.

Solve(Solve)

Attempted to solve a function while another solve was in progress.

Stat Math Error

The statistical data is invalid or incomplete.

Yes

The proposition made by a test function executed from the keyboard is true. For example, the calculator displays Yes if you press **FS?** 03 when flag 03 is set.



Note

The HP-42S uses <Too Big> in the Base application to display any number that is too big to display using a nondecimal base mode. That is, <Too Big> is a number, *not an error message*. Refer to page 249. To view a number that is displayed as <Too Big>, press and hold **SHOW**.

6

Character Table

The following table lists all of the Alpha characters used by the HP-42S. The keystrokes shown in the table assume that the first or second row of the ALPHA menu is displayed ([ALPHA] or [ALPHA] [▼]).

Display Character	Character Code	Keystrokes*	
	Dec	Hex	
÷	0	00	
×	1	01	
∫	2	02	
ʃ	3	03	
※	4	04	
Σ	5	05	
▶	6	06	
π	7	07	
÷	8	08	
≤	9	09	
↳	10	0A	
≥	11	0B	
≠	12	0C	
↔	13	0D	
↔	14	0E	
↔	15	0F	
↔	16	10	
μ	17	11	
£	18	12	
*	19	13	

- If a character is not typable (no keystrokes) you can enter it into the Alpha register by keying the character code into the X-register and then executing the XTOA function.

Display Character	Character Code	Keystrokes*
	Dec	Hex
À	20	14
Ñ	21	15
Á	22	16
Ç	23	17
È	24	18
Œ	25	19
…	26	1A
£	27	1B
Ö	28	1C
Ü	29	1D
×	30	1E
▪	31	1F
(space)	32	20
!	33	21
"	34	22
#	35	23
\$	36	24
%	37	25
&	38	26
-	39	27
(40	28
)	41	29
*	42	2A
+	43	2B
,	44	2C
-	45	2D
.	46	2E
/	47	2F
0	48	30
1	49	31
2	50	32
3	51	33
4	52	34
5	53	35
6	54	36
7	55	37
8	56	38
9	57	39
:	58	3A

- If a character is not typable (no keystrokes) you can enter it into the Alpha register by keying the character code into the X-register and then executing the XTOA function.

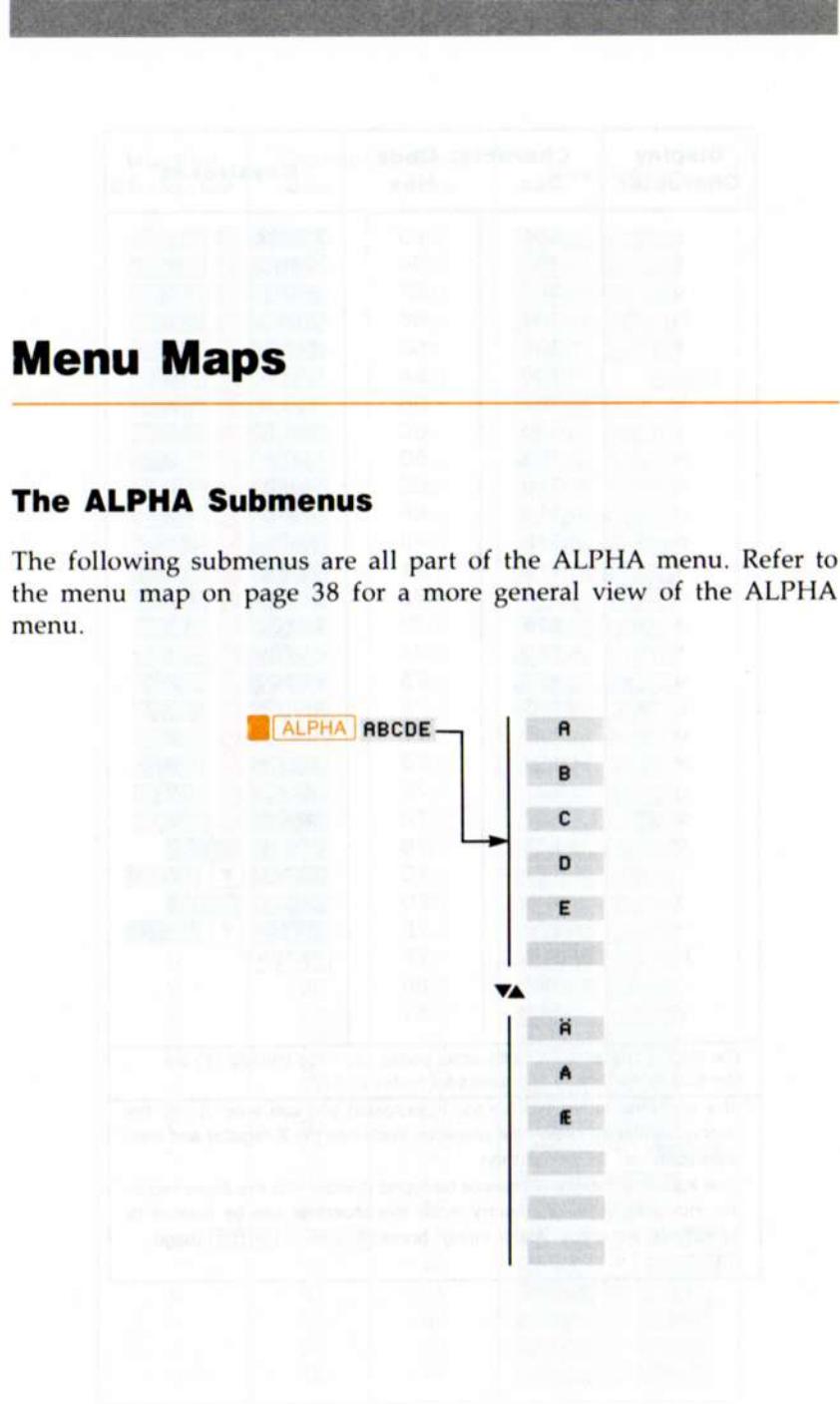
Display Character	Character Code		Keystrokes	
	Dec	Hex		
;	59	3B	PUNC	;
<	60	3C	< = >	<
=	61	3D	< = >	=
>	62	3E	< = >	>
?	63	3F	PUNC	?
@	64	40	MISC	▼ @
A	65	41	RBCDE	A
B	66	42	RBCDE	B
C	67	43	RBCDE	C
D	68	44	RBCDE	D
E	69	45	RBCDE	E
F	70	46	FCHI	F
G	71	47	FCHI	G
H	72	48	FCHI	H
I	73	49	FCHI	I
J	74	4A	JKLM	J
K	75	4B	JKLM	K
L	76	4C	JKLM	L
M	77	4D	JKLM	M
N	78	4E	NOPQ	N
O	79	4F	NOPQ	O
P	80	50	NOPQ	P
Q	81	51	NOPQ	Q
R	82	52	RSTUV	R
S	83	53	RSTUV	S
T	84	54	RSTUV	T
U	85	55	RSTUV	U
V	86	56	RSTUV	V
W	87	57	WXYZ	W
X	88	58	WXYZ	X
Y	89	59	WXYZ	Y
Z	90	5A	WXYZ	Z
Œ	91	5B	Œ œ	Œ
Œ	92	5C	MISC	▼ Œ
œ	93	5D	Œ œ	œ
†	94	5E	†††	†
–	95	5F	PUNC	▼ –
–	96	60	PUNC	▼ –
a	97	61	RBCDE	A
b	98	62	RBCDE	B
c	99	63	RBCDE	C
d	100	64	RBCDE	D

Display Character	Character Code		Keystrokes*	
	Dec	Hex		
e	101	65	RBCDE	E
f	102	66	FCHI	F
g	103	67	FCHI	G
h	104	68	FCHI	H
i	105	69	FCHI	I
j	106	6A	JKLM	J
k	107	6B	JKLM	K
l	108	6C	JKLM	L
m	109	6D	JKLM	M
n	110	6E	NOPQ	N
o	111	6F	NOPQ	O
p	112	70	NOPQ	P
q	113	71	NOPQ	Q
r	114	72	RSTUV	R
s	115	73	RSTUV	S
t	116	74	RSTUV	T
u	117	75	RSTUV	U
v	118	76	RSTUV	V
w	119	77	WXYZ	W
x	120	78	WXYZ	X
y	121	79	WXYZ	Y
z	122	7A	WXYZ	Z
(123	7B	Œ œ	Œ
)	124	7C	MISC	▼)
†	125	7D	Œ œ	†
~	126	7E	MISC	▼ ~
‑	127	7F	ENTER†	
:	128	80		
ÿ	129	81		

The display characters for character codes 130 – 255 (HEX82-FF) are identical to the display characters for codes 2 – 127.

* If a character is not typable (no keystrokes) you can enter it into the Alpha register by keying the character code into the X-register and then executing the XTOA function.

† The append character ‑ cannot be typed directly into the Alpha register. However, in Program-entry mode this character can be entered to specify an appended Alpha string: press ALPHA ENTER (page 130).

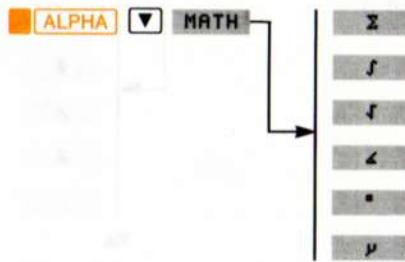
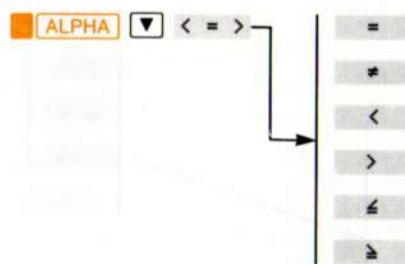
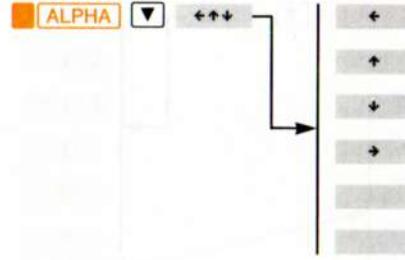
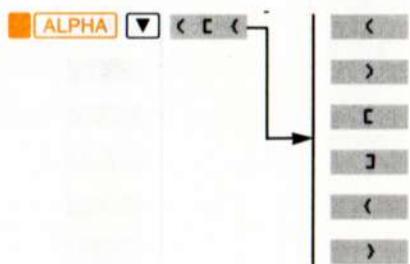
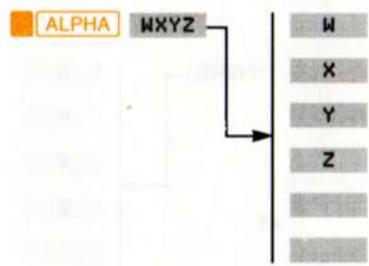
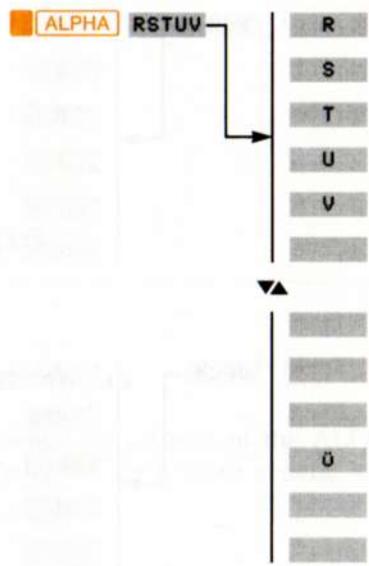


Menu Maps

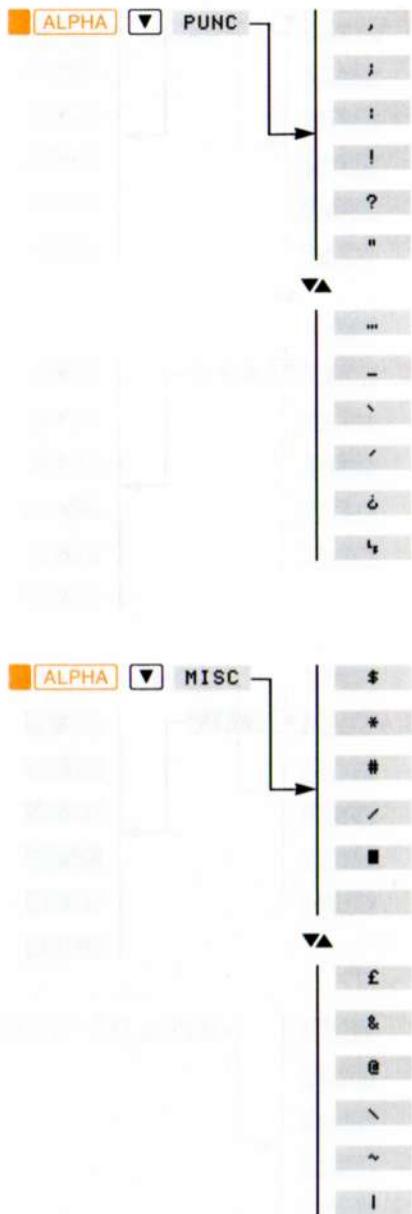
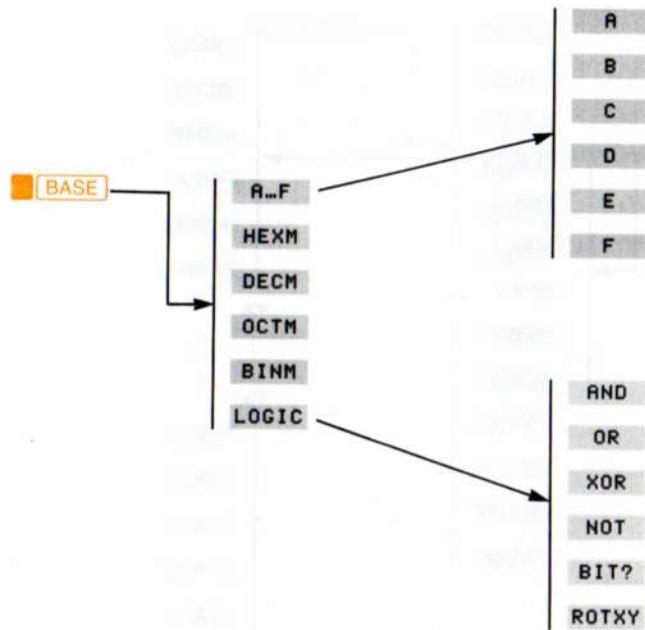
The ALPHA Submenus

The following submenus are all part of the ALPHA menu. Refer to the menu map on page 38 for a more general view of the ALPHA menu.

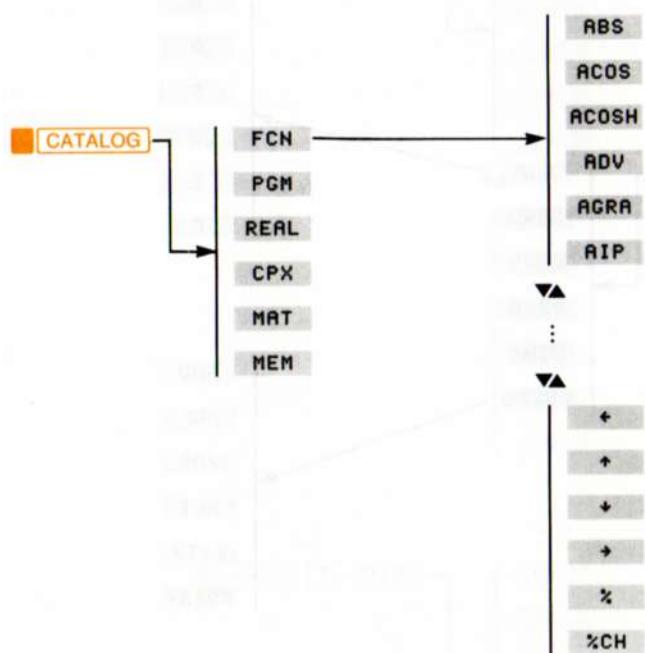




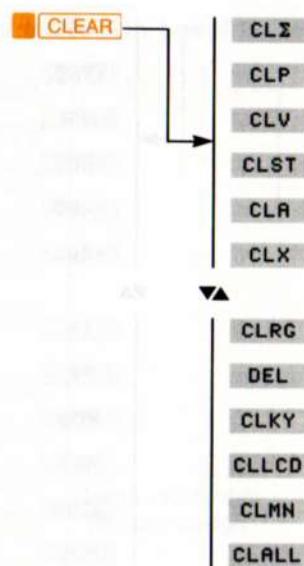
The BASE Menu



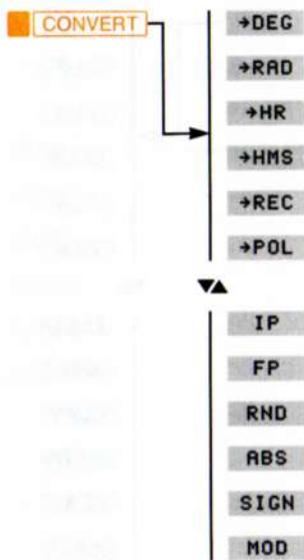
The CATALOG Menu



The CLEAR Menu

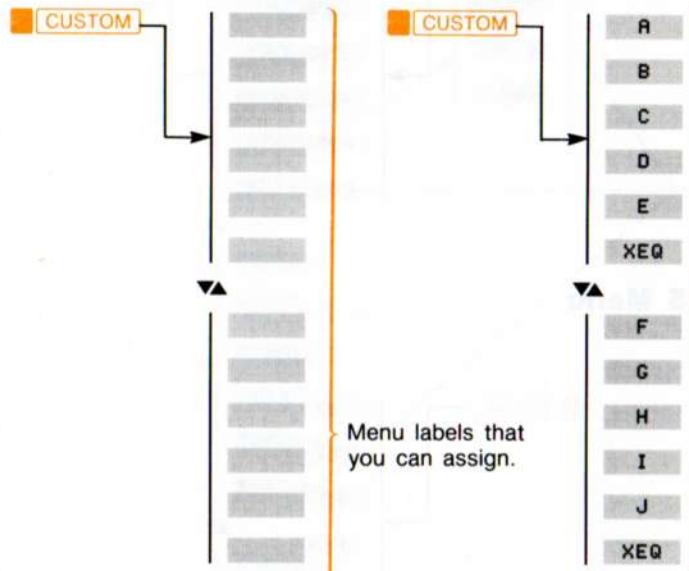
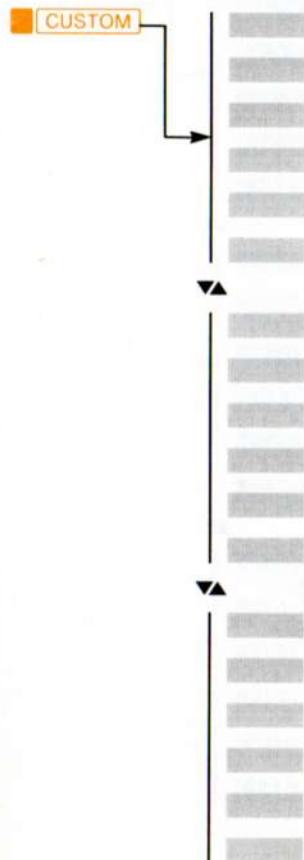


The CONVERT Menu



The CUSTOM Menu

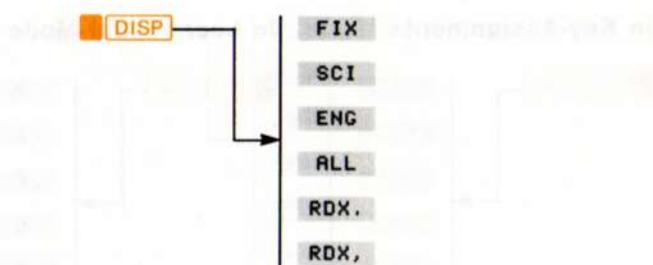
In Key-Assignments Mode In Local-Label Mode



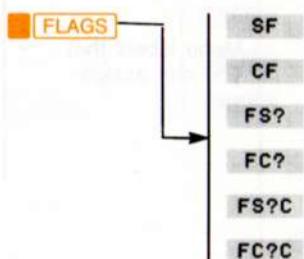
Menu labels that you can assign.

Keys for executing local labels.

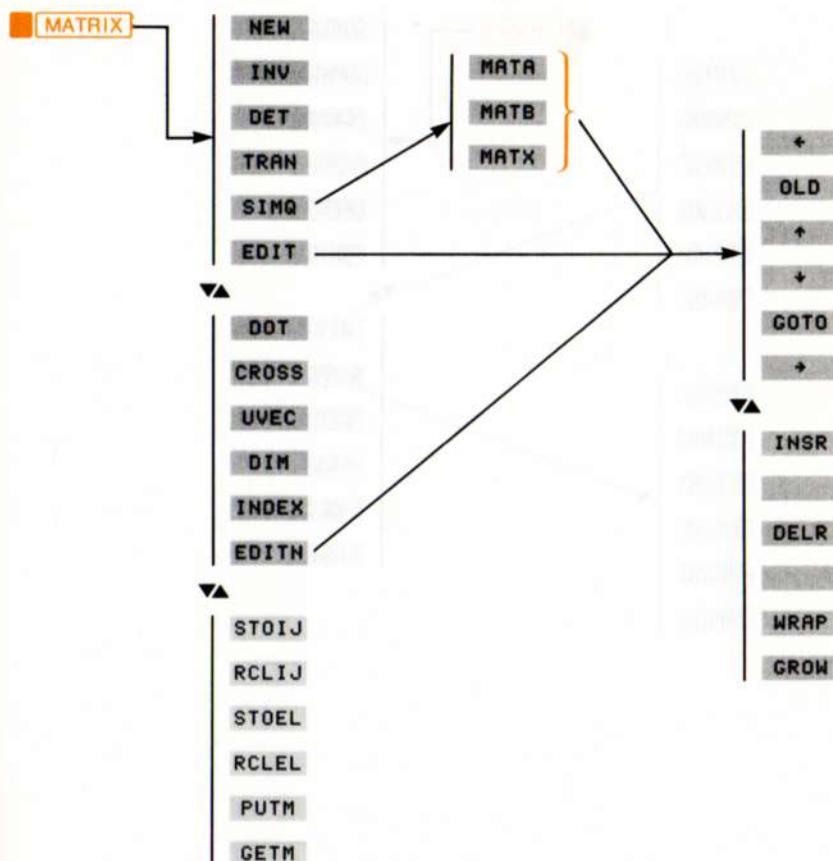
The DISP Menu



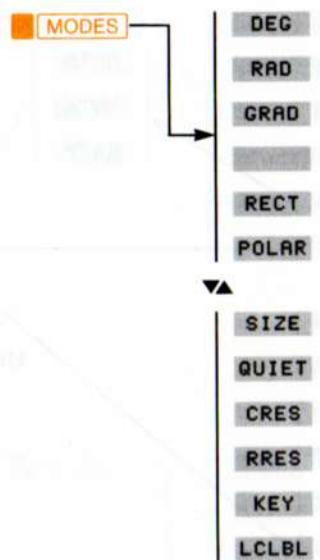
The FLAGS Menu



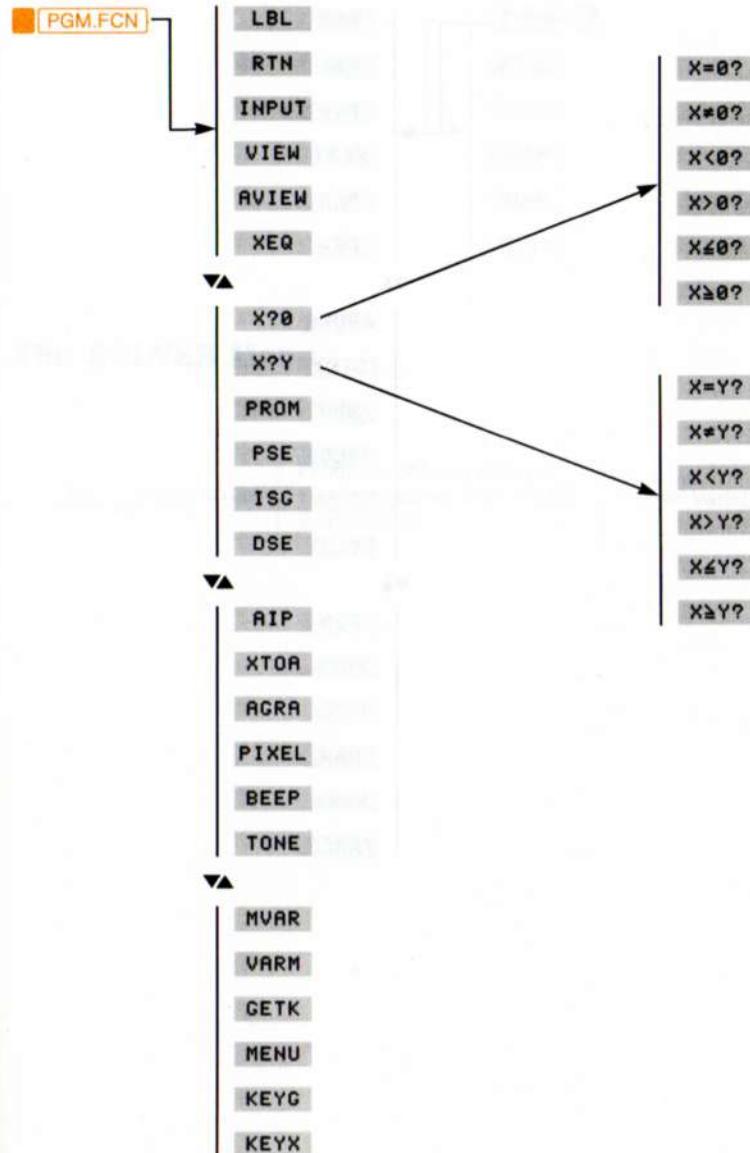
The MATRIX Menu



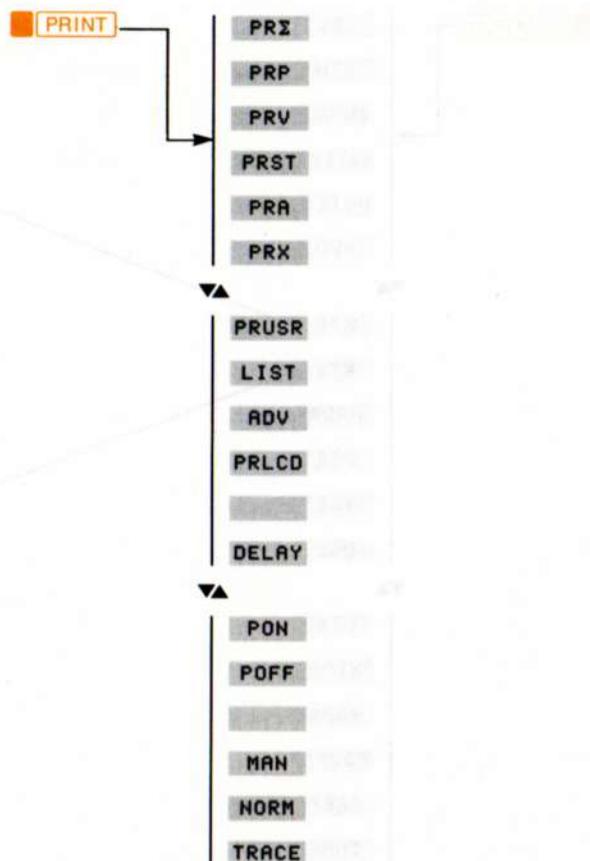
The MODES Menu



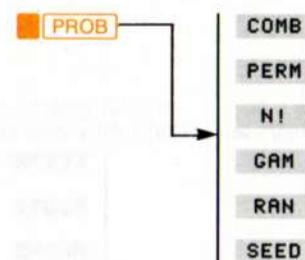
The PGM.FCN Menu



The PRINT Menu



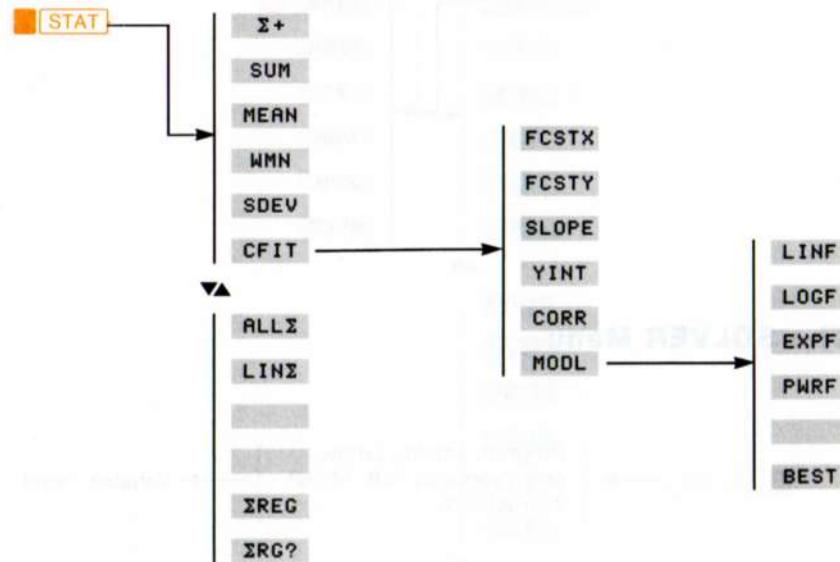
The PROB Menu



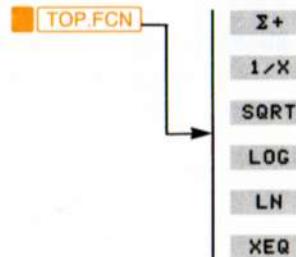
The SOLVER Menu

SOLVER → { Program catalog (shows only programs with MVAR instructions) } → Variable menu

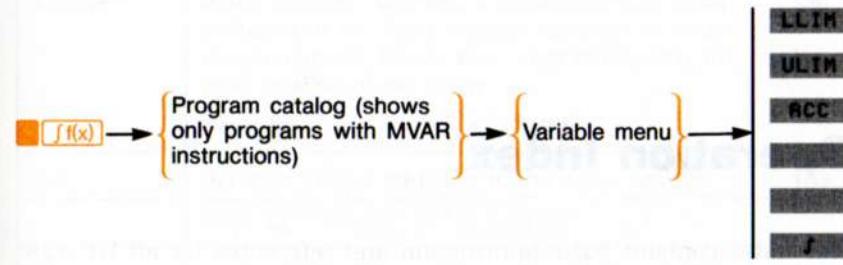
The STAT Menu



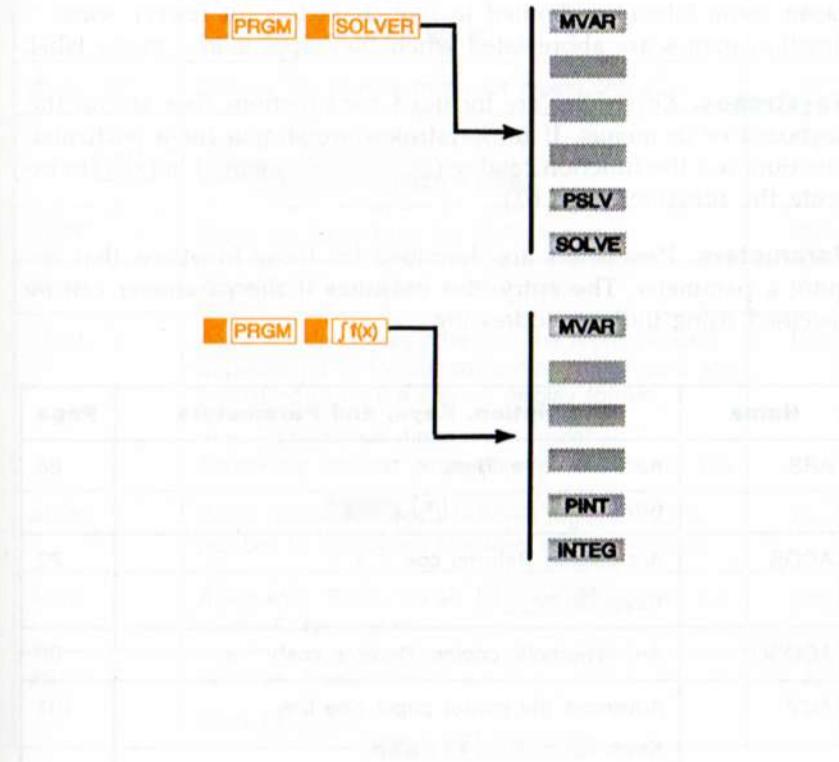
The TOP.FCN Menu



The ∫f(x) Menu



The PRGM Submenus



Operation Index

This index contains basic information and references for all HP-42S functions and keys.

Function Names. The entries in this index are listed alphabetically (with special characters at the end). This is the same order used in the function catalog.

Note that this index uses the *full Alpha name* for each function. Because menu labels are limited to five characters (or fewer), some function names are abbreviated when they appear in a menu label.

Keystrokes. Keystrokes are included for functions that are on the keyboard or in menus. If no keystrokes are shown for a particular function, use the function catalog (**CATALOG** **FCN**) or **XEQ** to execute the function (page 67).

Parameters. Parameters are described for those functions that require a parameter. The entry also indicates if the parameter can be specified using indirect addressing.

Name	Description, Keys, and Parameters	Page
ABS	Absolute value. Returns $ x $. Keys: CONVERT ABS	86
ACOS	Arc cosine. Returns $\cos^{-1} x$. Keys: ACOS	82
ACOSH	Arc hyperbolic cosine. Returns $\cosh^{-1} x$.	89
ADV	Advances the printer paper one line. Keys: PRINT ADV	101

Name	Description, Keys, and Parameters	Page
AGRAPH	Alpha graphics. Displays a graphics image. Each character in the Alpha register specifies an 8-dot column pattern. The X- and Y-registers specify the pixel location of the image. Keys: PGM.FCN ▼ ▼ AGRA	136
AIP	Appends integer part of x to the Alpha register. Keys: PGM.FCN ▼ ▼ AIP	133
ALENG	Alpha length. Returns the number of characters in the Alpha register.	135
ALL	Selects the All display format. Keys: DISP ALL	36
ALLΣ	Selects AllΣ (All-statistics) mode, which uses 13 summation coefficients. Keys: STAT ▼ ALLΣ	233
ALPHA	Selects the ALPHA menu for typing characters.	37
AND	Logical AND. Returns $x \text{ AND } y$. Keys: BASE LOGIC AND	250
AOFF	Alpha off. Exits from the ALPHA menu.	157
AON	Alpha on. Selects the ALPHA menu.	156
ARCL	Alpha recall. Copies data into the Alpha register appending it to the current contents. Numbers are formatted using the current display format. Key: RCL (when Alpha mode is on) Parameter: register or variable Indirect: Yes	133
AROT	Alpha rotate. Rotates the Alpha register by the number of characters specified in the X-register.	135
ASHF	Alpha shift. Shifts the six left-most characters out of the Alpha register.	135
ASIN	Arc sine. Returns $\sin^{-1} x$. Keys: ASIN	82

Name	Description, Keys, and Parameters	Page
ASINH	Arc hyperbolic sine. Returns $\sinh^{-1} x$.	89
ASSIGN	Assigns a function, program, or variable to a menu key in the CUSTOM menu. Keys: ASSIGN Parameters: refer to the table on page 72.	68
ASTO	Alpha store. Copies the first six characters in the Alpha register into a register or variable. Key: STO (when Alpha mode is on) Parameter: register or variable Indirect: Yes	132
ATAN	Arc tangent. Returns $\tan^{-1} x$. Keys: ATAN	82
ATANH	Arc hyperbolic tangent. Returns $\tanh^{-1} x$.	89
ATOX	Alpha to X. Converts the left-most character in the Alpha register to its character code (returned to the X-register) and deletes the character.	134
AVIEW	Alpha view. Displays the Alpha register. Keys: PGM.FCN AVIEW	129
BASE	Selects the BASE menu.	245
BASE+	Base addition. Returns the 36-bit sum of $y + x$. Key: BASE +	249
BASE-	Base subtraction. Returns the 36-bit difference of $y - x$. Key: BASE -	249
BASE×	Base multiplication. Returns the 36-bit product of $y \times x$. Key: BASE x	249
BASE÷	Base division. Returns the 36-bit quotient of $y \div x$. Key: BASE ÷	249

Name	Description, Keys, and Parameters	Page
BASE+/-	Base change sign. Returns the 36-bit 2's complement of x . Key: BASE +/-	249
BEEP	Sounds a sequence of four tones. Keys: PGM.FCN ▼ ▼ BEEP	24
BEST	Selects the best curve-fitting model for the current statistical data. Keys: STAT CFIT MODL BEST	240
BINM	Selects Binary mode (base 2). Keys: BASE BINM	245
BIT?	Tests the x^{th} bit of y . If the bit is set (1), executes the next program line; if the bit is clear (0), skips the next program line. Keys: BASE LOGIC BIT?	250
BST	Back step. Moves the program pointer to the previous program line. (Not programmable.) Keys: BST (or ▲ if no menu is displayed)	111
CF	Clears flag nn ($00 \leq nn \leq 35$; $81 \leq nn \leq 99$). Keys: FLAGS CF Parameter: flag number Indirect: Yes	41
CATALOG	Selects the CATALOG menu.	40
CLA	Clears Alpha register. If Alpha mode is on and character entry is terminated (no cursor displayed), then ◆ also executes the CLA function. Keys: CLEAR CLA	26
CLALL	Clear all. Clears all stored programs and data. (Not Programmable.) Keys: CLEAR ▼ CLALL YES	26
CLD	Clear display. Clears a message from the display.	26
CLEAR	Selects the CLEAR menu.	26

Name	Description, Keys, and Parameters	Page
CLKEYS	Clears all CUSTOM menu assignments. Keys:	70
CLLCD	Clear LCD (liquid crystal display). Blanks the entire display. Keys:	136
CLMENU	Clear MENU. Deletes all menu key definitions for the programmable menu. Keys:	146
CLP	Clears a program from memory. Keys: Parameter: global label Indirect: No	119
CLRG	Clears all of the numbered storage registers to zero. Keys:	64
CLST	Clears the stack registers to zero. Keys:	43
CLV	Clears a variable from memory. Keys: Parameter: variable name Indirect: Yes	62
CLX	Clears X-register to zero. If digit entry is terminated (no cursor in the display), also executes CLX. Keys:	48
CLΣ	Clear statistics. Clears the accumulated statistical data in the summation registers. Keys:	228
COMB	Combinations of y items taken x at a time. Returns $y! \div (x!(y - x)!)$. Keys:	87

Name	Description, Keys, and Parameters	Page
COMPLEX	Converts two real numbers (or matrices) into a complex number (or matrix). Converts a complex number (or matrix) into two real numbers (or matrices). Keys:	91
	Selects the CONVERT menu.	82
CORR	Returns a correlation coefficient using the current statistical data and curve-fitting model. Keys:	240
COS	Cosine. Returns cos x . Key:	81
COSH	Hyperbolic cosine. Returns cosh x .	89
CPXRES	Complex-results. Enables the calculator to return a complex result, even if the inputs are real numbers. Keys:	94
CPX?	If the X-register contains a complex number, executes the next program line; if the X-register does not contain a complex number, skips the next program line.	151
CROSS	Returns the cross product of two vectors (matrices or complex numbers). Keys:	220
	Selects the CUSTOM menu.	68
DECIM	Selects Decimal mode (base 10). Keys:	245
DEG	Selects the Degrees angular mode. Keys:	80

Name	Description, Keys, and Parameters	Page
DEL	Deletes the specified number of lines from the current program. Program-entry mode must be on. (Not programmable.) Keys: Parameter: number of lines Indirect: No	120
DELAY	Sets the print <i>delay</i> time to <i>x</i> seconds. Keys:	103
DELR	<i>Delete row.</i> Deletes the current row from the indexed matrix. Keys:	214
DET	Returns the <i>determinant</i> of the matrix in the X-register. Keys:	219
DIM	<i>Dimensions</i> a matrix to <i>x</i> columns and <i>y</i> rows. If the matrix does not exist, DIM creates it. Keys: Parameter: variable name Indirect: Yes	217
DIM?	Returns the <i>dimensions of</i> the matrix in the X-register (<i>rows</i> to the Y-register and <i>columns</i> to the X-register). Keys:	217
	Selects the DISP menu. Keys:	34
DOT	Returns the <i>dot product</i> of two vectors (matrices or complex numbers). Keys:	220
DSE	<i>Decrement, Skip if (less than or) Equal.</i> Given <i>ccccccc.ffffii</i> in a variable or register, decrements <i>ccccccc</i> by <i>ii</i> and skips the next program line if <i>ccccccc</i> is now \leq <i>fff</i> . Keys: Parameter: register or variable Indirect: Yes	153
	<i>Enter exponent.</i> Adds "E" to the number being entered. Indicates that a power of ten follows. Keys:	27

Name	Description, Keys, and Parameters	Page
EDIT	<i>Edit</i> a matrix in the X-register. Keys:	206
EDITN	<i>Edit a named matrix.</i> Keys: Parameter: variable name Indirect: Yes	208
END	<i>End of a program.</i>	118
ENG	Selects <i>Engineering</i> display format. Keys: Parameter: number of digits Indirect: Yes	36
ENTER	Separates two numbers keyed in sequentially; copies <i>x</i> into the Y-register, <i>y</i> into the Z-register, and <i>z</i> into the T-register, and loses <i>t</i> . Key:	46
EXIT	Exits the current menu. (Not programmable.)	23
EXITALL	Exits all menus.	
EXPF	Selects the <i>exponential</i> curve-fitting model. Keys:	240
E ^t X	<i>Natural exponential.</i> Returns e^x . Keys:	78
E ^t X-1	<i>Natural exponential</i> for values of <i>x</i> which are close to zero. Returns $e^x - 1$, which provides a much higher accuracy in the fractional part of the result.	—
FC?	If the specified flag is clear, executes the next program line; if the flag is set, skips the next program line. Keys: Parameter: flag number Indirect: Yes	41

Name	Description, Keys, and Parameters	Page
FC?C	If the specified flag is clear, executes the next program line; if the flag is set, skips the next program line. Cleared after the test is complete. (This function can be used only with flags 00 through 35 and 81 through 99.) Keys: FLAGS FC?C Parameter: flag number Indirect: Yes	41
FCSTX	Forecasts an <i>x</i> -value given a <i>y</i> -value. Keys: STAT CFIT FCSTX	240
FCSTY	Forecasts a <i>y</i> -value given an <i>x</i> -value. Keys: STAT CFIT FCSTY	240
FIX	Selects Fixed-decimal display format. Keys: DISP FIX Parameter: number of digits Indirect: Yes	35
FLAGS	Selects the FLAGS menu.	41
FNRM	Returns the Frobenius norm of the matrix in the X-register.	219
FP	Returns the fractional part of <i>x</i> . Keys: CONVERT FP	86
FS?	If the specified flag is set, executes the next program line; if the flag is clear, skips the next program line. Keys: FLAGS FS? Parameter: flag number Indirect: Yes	41
FS?C	If the specified flag is set, executes the next program line; if the flag is clear, skips the next program line. Clears the flag after the test is complete. (This function can be used only with flags 00 through 35 and 81 through 99.) Keys: FLAGS FS?C Parameter: flag number Indirect: Yes	41

Name	Description, Keys, and Parameters	Page
GAMMA	Gamma function. Returns $\Gamma(x)$. Keys: PROB GAM	88
GETKEY	Get key. The calculator waits for you to press a key. When you do, the key number is returned to the X-register. Keys are numbered from 1 through 37 ($\Sigma+$ through $+$) for normal keys and 38 through 74 ($\Sigma-$ through CATALOG) for shifted keys. Keys: PGM.FCN GETK	
GETM	Get matrix. Copies a submatrix into the X-register from the indexed matrix. Keys: MATRIX GETM	226
GRAD	Selects Grads angular mode. Keys: MODES GRAD	80
GROW	Selects Grow mode. Executing \rightarrow or J+ causes the matrix to grow by one new row if the index pointers are at the last (lower-right) element in the matrix. Keys: MATRIX GROW	213
GTO	Go to label. From the keyboard, moves the program pointer to the specified label. In a running program, causes the program to branch to the specified label. Keys: GTO Parameter: local or global label Indirect: Yes	141
GTO	Moves the program pointer to a line number or global label. (Not programmable.)	111
GTO	Moves the program pointer to a new program space. (Not programmable.)	118
HEXM	Selects Hexadecimal mode (base 16). Keys: BASE HEXM	245

Name	Description, Keys, and Parameters	Page
HMS+	Adds x and y using $H.MMSSss$ (hours-minutes-seconds) format.	84
HMS-	Subtracts x from y using $H.MMSSss$ format.	84
I+	Increments the row pointer in the indexed matrix.	224
I-	Decrements the row pointer in the indexed matrix.	224
INDEX	Indexes a named matrix. Keys: MATRIX INDEX Parameter: variable name Indirect: Yes	223
INPUT	Recalls a register or variable to the X-register, displays the name of the register or variable along with the contents of the X-register, and halts program execution; pressing R/S (or SST) stores x into the register or variable; pressing EXIT cancels. (Used only in programs.) Keys: PGM.FCN INPUT Parameter: register or variable Indirect: Yes	121
INSR	Inserts a row in the indexed matrix. Keys: MATRIX EDIT INSR	214
INTEG	Integrates the selected integration program with respect to the specified variable. Parameter: variable name Indirect: Yes	203
INVRT	Returns the inverse of the matrix in the X-register. Keys: MATRIX INV	219
IP	Returns the integer part of x . Keys: CONVERT IP	86
ISG	Increment, Skip if Greater. Given $ccccccc.fffii$ in a variable or register, increments $ccccccc$ by ii and skips the next program line if $ccccccc$ is now $> fff$. Keys: PGM.FCN ISG Parameter: register or variable Indirect: Yes	153

Name	Description, Keys, and Parameters	Page
J+	Increments the column pointer in the indexed matrix.	224
J-	Decrements the column pointer in the indexed matrix.	224
KEYASN	Selects Key-assignments mode for the CUSTOM menu. Keys: MODES KEY	167
KEYG	On menu key, go to. Defines the label to be branched to when a particular menu key is pressed. Keys: PGM.FCN KEYG Parameters: refer to the table on page 72.	145
KEYX	On menu key, execute. Defines the label to be executed (as a subroutine) when a particular menu key is pressed. Keys: PGM.FCN KEYX Parameters: refer to the table on page 72.	145
LASTX	Last x . Recalls the last value of x used in a calculation. Keys: LASTx	48
LBL	Label. Identifies programs and routines for execution and branching. Keys: PGM.FCN LBL Parameter: local or global label Indirect: No	116
LCLBL	Selects Local label mode for the CUSTOM menu. Keys: MODES LCLBL	167
LINF	Selects the linear curve-fitting model. Keys: STAT CFIT MODL LINF	240
LINΣ	Selects Linear statistics mode, which uses six summation coefficients. Keys: STAT LINΣ	233

Name	Description, Keys, and Parameters	Page
LIST	Prints a portion of a program listing. (Not programmable.) Keys: LIST Parameter: number of lines Indirect: No	105
LN	Natural logarithm. Returns $\ln x$. Key:	78
LN1+X	Natural logarithm for values close to zero. Returns $\ln(1 + x)$, which provides a much higher accuracy in the fractional part of the result.	
LOG	Common logarithm. Returns $\log_{10} x$. Key:	78
LOGF	Selects the logarithmic curve-fitting model. Keys: CFIT MODL LOGF	240
MAN	Selects Manual print mode. Keys: MAN	102
MAT?	If the X-register contains a matrix, executes the next program line; if the X-register does not contain a matrix, skips the next program line.	151
MEAN	Mean. Returns the mean of x-values ($\Sigma x \div n$) and the mean of y-values ($\Sigma y \div n$). Keys: MEAN	231
MENU	Selects the programmable menu. Keys: MENU	146
MOD	Modulo. Returns the remainder for $y \div x$. Keys: MOD	87
MVAR	Declares a menu variable. Keys: MVAR Parameter: variable name Indirect: No	125

Name	Description, Keys, and Parameters	Page
N!	Factorial. Returns $x!$. Keys: N!	87
NEWMAT	New matrix. Creates a $y \times x$ matrix in the X-register. Keys: NEW	206
NORM	Selects Normal print mode, which prints a record of keystrokes. Keys: NORM	102
NOT	Logical NOT. Returns NOT x . Keys: LOGIC NOT	250
OCTM	Selects Octal mode (base 8). Keys: OCTM	245
	Turns the calculator off. (Not programmable.)	18
OFF	Turns the calculator off (programmable). (Pressing does not execute the programmable OFF function.)	
OLD	Recalls the current element from the indexed matrix. (Equivalent to RCLEL.)	213
ON	Continuous on. Prevents the calculator from automatically turning off after ten minutes of inactivity.	
OR	Logical OR. Returns x OR y . Keys: LOGIC OR	250
	Selects the PGM.FCN (programming functions) menu.	24
PERM	Permutations of y items taken x at a time. Returns $y! \div (y - x)!$. Keys: PERM	87
PGMINT	Selects a program to integrate. Keys: PINT (in Program-entry mode) Parameter: global label Indirect: Yes	203

Name	Description, Keys, and Parameters	Page
PGMSLV	Selects a program to solve. Keys: SOLVER PSLV (in Program-entry mode) Parameter: global label Indirect: Yes	189
PI	Recalls an approximation of π into the X-register (3.14159265359). Keys:	117
PIXEL	Turns on a single pixel (dot) in the display. The location of the pixel is given by the numbers in the X- and Y-registers. Keys: ▼ ▼ PIXEL	135
POLAR	Selects Polar coordinate mode for displaying complex numbers. Keys: POLAR	80
POSA	Position in Alpha. Searches the Alpha register for the target specified in the X-register. If found, returns the character position; if not found, returns -1.	134
PRA	Print Alpha register. Keys: PRA	102
PRLCD	Print LCD (liquid crystal display). Prints the entire display. Keys: ▼ PRLCD	101
	Toggles the calculator in and out of Program-entry mode.	111
	Selects the PRINT menu.	101
	Selects the PROB (probability) menu.	87
PROFF	Printing off. Clears flags 21 and 55. Keys: ▲ POFF	101

Name	Description, Keys, and Parameters	Page
PROMPT	Displays the Alpha register and halts program execution. Keys: ▼ PROM	129
PRON	Printing on. Sets flags 21 and 55. Keys: ▲ PON	101
PRP	Print program. If a label is not specified, prints the current program. (Not programmable.) Keys: PRP Parameter: global label (optional) Indirect: No	104
PRSTK	Print stack. Prints the contents of the stack registers (X, Y, Z, and T). Keys: PRST	101
PRUSR	Prints user variables and programs. Keys: ▼ PRUSR	101
PRV	Print variable. Keys: PRV Parameter: variable name Indirect: Yes	63
PRX	Print X-register. Keys: PRX	101
PRΣ	Print statistics. Prints the contents of the summation registers. Keys: PRΣ	237
PSE	Pauses program execution for about 1 second. Keys: ▼ PSE	131
PUTM	Put matrix. Stores the matrix in the X-register into the indexed matrix beginning at the current element. Keys: ▲ PUTM	226
PWRF	Selects the power curve-fitting model. Keys: CFIT MODL PWRF	240

Name	Description, Keys, and Parameters	Page
QUIET	Toggles flag 26 to disable/enable the beeper. (Not programmable.) Keys: MODES ▼ QUIET	275
RAD	Selects Radians angular mode. Keys: MODES RAD	80
RAN	Returns a random number ($0 \leq x < 1$). Keys: PROB RAN	88
RCL	Recalls data into the X-register. Key: RCL Parameter: register or variable Indirect: Yes	55
RCL+	Recall addition. Recalls data and adds it to the contents of the X-register. Keys: RCL + Parameter: register or variable Indirect: Yes	61
RCL-	Recall subtraction. Recalls data and subtracts it from the contents of the X-register. Keys: RCL - Parameter: register or variable Indirect: Yes	61
RCL×	Recall multiplication. Recalls data and multiplies it by the contents of the X-register. Keys: RCL × Parameter: register or variable Indirect: Yes	61
RCL÷	Recall division. Recalls data and divides it into the contents of the X-register. Keys: RCL ÷ Parameter: register or variable Indirect: Yes	61
RCLEL	Recall element. Recalls the current matrix element from the indexed matrix. Keys: MATRIX ▲ RCLEL	225

Name	Description, Keys, and Parameters	Page
RCLIJ	Recalls the row- and column-pointer values (I and J) for the indexed matrix. Keys: MATRIX ▲ RCLIJ	224
RDX,	Selects a comma to be used as the radix mark (decimal point). Keys: DISP RDX,	36
RDX.	Selects a period to be used as the radix mark (decimal point). Keys: DISP RDX.	36
REALRES	Real-results. Disables the calculator's ability to return a complex result using real-number inputs. Keys: MODES ▼ RRES	94
REAL?	If the X-register contains a real number, executes the next program line; if the X-register does not contain a real number, skips the next program line.	151
RECT	Selects Rectangular coordinate mode for displaying complex numbers. Keys: MODES RECT	80
RND	Rounds the number in the X-register using the current display format. Keys: CONVERT ▼ RND	86
RNRM	Returns the row norm of the matrix in the X-register.	219
ROTXY	Rotates the 36-bit number in the Y-register by x bits. Keys: BASE LOGIC ROTXY	250
RSUM	Returns the row sum of each row of the matrix in the X-register and returns the sums in a column matrix.	220

Name	Description, Keys, and Parameters	Page
RTN	<i>Return.</i> In a running program, branches the program pointer back to the line following the most recent XEQ instruction. If there is no matching XEQ instruction, program execution halts. From the keyboard, RTN moves the program pointer to line 00 of the current program. Keys: PGM.FCN RTN	143
R<>R	<i>Row swap row.</i> Swaps the elements in rows x and y in the indexed matrix.	225
Rt	<i>Rolls</i> the contents of the four stack registers <i>up</i> one position.	
R↓	<i>Rolls</i> the contents of the four stack registers <i>down</i> one position. Key: R↓	44
R/S	<i>Run/stop.</i> Runs a program (beginning at the current program line) or stops a running program. In Program-entry mode, inserts a STOP instruction into the program.	113
SCI	Selects Scientific display format. Keys: DISP SCI Parameter: number of digits Indirect: Yes	35
SDEV	<i>Standard deviation.</i> Returns s_x and s_y using the current statistical data. Keys: STAT SDEV	232
SEED	Stores a seed for the random number generator. Keys: PROB SEED	88
SF	Sets flag nn ($00 \leq nn \leq 35$; $81 \leq nn \leq 99$). Keys: FLAGS SF Parameter: flag number Indirect: Yes	41
SHOW	Shows full precision of the number in the X-register, the entire Alpha register, or a complete program line.	36

Name	Description, Keys, and Parameters	Page
SIGN	<i>Sign.</i> Returns 1 for $x \geq 0$, -1 for $x < 0$, and 0 for non-numbers. Returns the unit vector of a complex number. Keys: CONVERT ▾ SIGN	86
SIN	<i>Sine.</i> Returns sin x. Key: SIN	80
SINH	<i>Hyperbolic sine.</i> Returns sinh x.	89
SIZE	Sets the number of storage registers. Keys: MODES ▾ SIZE Parameter: number of registers Indirect: No	64
SLOPE	Returns the <i>slope</i> of the linear transformation of the current curve-fitting model. Keys: STAT CFIT SLOPE	240
SOLVE	Solves for an unknown variable. Keys: SOLVER SOLVE (in Program-entry mode) Parameter: variable name Indirect: Yes	189
SOLVER	Selects the SOLVER menu.	178
SQRT	<i>Square root.</i> Returns \sqrt{x} . Key: √x	78
SST	<i>Single step.</i> Moves the program pointer to the next program line. (Not programmable.) Keys: SST (or ▾ if no menu is displayed)	114
STAT	Selects the STAT (statistics) menu.	231
STO	Stores a copy of x into a destination register or variable. Key: STO Parameter: register or variable Indirect: Yes	55
STO+	<i>Store addition.</i> Adds x to an existing register or variable. Keys: STO + Parameter: register or variable Indirect: Yes	61

Name	Description, Keys, and Parameters	Page
STO –	Store subtraction. Subtracts x from an existing register or variable. Keys: STO – Parameter: register or variable Indirect: Yes	61
STO \times	Store multiplication. Multiplies an existing register or variable by x . Keys: STO \times Parameter: register or variable Indirect: Yes	61
STO \div	Store division. Divides an existing register or variable by x . Keys: STO ÷ Parameter: register or variable Indirect: Yes	61
STOEL	Store element. Stores a copy of x into the current element of the indexed matrix. Keys: MATRIX ▲ STOEL	225
STOIJ	Moves the row- and column-pointers to $I = y$ and $J = x$ in the indexed matrix. Keys: MATRIX ▲ STOIJ	224
STOP	Stops program execution. Key: R/S (in Program-entry mode)	114
STR?	If the X-register contains an Alpha string, executes the next program line; if the X-register does not contain an Alpha string, skips the next program line.	151
SUM	Returns the sums Σx and Σy into the X- and Y-registers. STAT SUM	231
TAN	Tangent. Returns $\tan x$. Key: TAN	
TANH	Hyperbolic tangent. Returns $\tanh x$.	89

Name	Description, Keys, and Parameters	Page
TONE	Sounds a tone. Keys: PGM.FCN ▼ ▼ TONE Parameter: tone number (0–9) Indirect: Yes	144
TRACE	Selects Trace printing mode, which prints a record of keystrokes and results. Keys: PRINT ▲ TRACE	102
TRANS	Returns the transpose of the matrix in the X-register. Keys: MATRIX TRAN	219
UVEC	Unit vector. Returns the unit vector for the matrix or complex number in the X-register. Keys: MATRIX ▼ UVEC	220
VARMENU	Creates a variable menu using MVAR instructions following the specified global label. Keys: PGM.FCN ▲ VARM Parameter: global program label Indirect: Yes	125
VIEW	Views the contents of a register or variable. Keys: PGM.FCN VIEW Parameter: register or variable Indirect: Yes	128
WMEAN	Weighted mean. Returns the mean of x -values weighted by the y -values: $\Sigma xy \div \Sigma y$. Keys: STAT WMN	231
WRAP	Selects Wrap mode, which prevents the indexed matrix from growing. Keys: MATRIX EDIT ▼ WRAP	213
X<>	Swaps the contents of the X-register with another register or variable. Parameter: register or variable Indirect: Yes	—
X<>Y	Swaps the contents of the X- and Y-registers. Key: xy	44

Name	Description, Keys, and Parameters	Page
X<0?	X less than zero test. Keys: X?0 X<0?	151
X<Y?	X less than y test. Keys: X?Y X<Y?	151
X≤0?	X less than or equal to zero test. Keys: X?0 X≤0?	151
X≤Y?	X less than or equal to y test. Keys: X?Y X≤Y?	151
X=0?	X equal to zero test. Keys: X?0 X=0?	151
X=Y?	X equal to y test. Keys: X?Y X=Y?	151
X≠0?	X not equal to zero test. Keys: X?0 X≠0?	151
X≠Y?	X not equal to y test. Keys: X?Y X≠Y?	151
X>0?	X greater than zero test. Keys: X?0 X>0?	151
X>Y?	X greater than y test. Keys: X?Y X>Y?	151
X≥0?	X greater than or equal to zero test. Keys: X?0 X≥0?	151
X≥Y?	X greater than or equal to y test. Keys: X?Y X≥Y?	151

Name	Description, Keys, and Parameters	Page
XEQ	Execute a function or program. Key: Parameter: function or label Indirect: Yes	143
XOR	Logical XOR (exclusive OR). Returns x XOR y. Keys: LOGIC XOR	250
XTOA	X to Alpha. Appends a character (specified by the code in the X-register) to the Alpha register. If the X-register contains an Alpha string, appends the entire string. Keys: XTOA	134
Xt2	Square. Returns x^2 . Keys:	78
YINT	Y intercept. Returns the y-intercept of the curve fitted to the current statistical data. Keys: CFIT YINT	240
Y↑X	Power. Returns y^x . Keys:	78
	Selects the f(x) menu.	197
1/X	Reciprocal. Returns $1 \div x$. Key:	78
10↑X	Common exponential. Returns 10^x . Keys:	78
+	Addition. Returns $y + x$. Key:	78
-	Subtraction. Returns $y - x$. Key:	78

Name	Description, Keys, and Parameters	Page
\times	<i>Multiplication.</i> Returns $x \times y$. Key:	78
\div	<i>Division.</i> Returns $y \div x$. Key:	78
$+/-$	Changes the sign of the number in the X-register. While entering an exponent, can also be used to change the sign of the exponent. Key:	78
$\Sigma +$	<i>Summation plus.</i> Accumulates a pair of x- and y-values into the summation registers. Key:	228
$\Sigma -$	<i>Summation minus.</i> Subtracts a pair of x- and y-values from the summation registers. Keys:	232
ΣREG	<i>Summation registers.</i> Defines which storage register begins the block of summation registers. Keys: Parameter: register number Indirect: Yes	234
$\Sigma\text{REG?}$	Returns the register number of the first summation register.	234
$\rightarrow\text{DEC}$	<i>To decimal.</i> Converts the octal (base 8) representation of a number to decimal (base 10). Note: This function is included to provide program compatibility with the HP-41 (which uses the function name DEC) and is not related to the Base application (chapter 16).	171
$\rightarrow\text{DEG}$	<i>To degrees.</i> Converts an angle-value from radians to degrees. Returns $(360/2\pi)x$. Keys:	83
$\rightarrow\text{HMS}$	<i>To hours, minutes, and seconds.</i> Converts x from a decimal fraction to a minutes-seconds format. Keys:	83

Name	Description, Keys, and Parameters	Page
$\rightarrow\text{HR}$	<i>To hours.</i> Converts x from a minutes-seconds format to a decimal fraction.	83
$\rightarrow\text{OCT}$	<i>To octal.</i> Converts a decimal number to the octal representation. Note: This function is included to provide program compatibility with the HP-41 (which uses the function name OCT) and is not related to the Base application (chapter 16).	171
$\rightarrow\text{POL}$	<i>To polar.</i> Converts x and y to the corresponding polar coordinates r and θ . If the X-register contains a complex number, converts the two parts of the number to polar values. Keys:	84
$\rightarrow\text{RAD}$	<i>To radians.</i> Converts an angle value in degrees to radians. Returns $(2\pi/360)x$.	83
$\rightarrow\text{REC}$	<i>To rectangular.</i> Converts r (in the X-register) and θ (in the Y-register) to the corresponding rectangular coordinates, x and y. If the X-register contains a complex number, converts the two parts of the number to rectangular values. Keys:	84
	Backspaces or clears X-register. In Program-entry mode, deletes the current program line.	25
	Moves left one element in the indexed matrix.	212
	Moves up one element in the indexed matrix.	212
	Moves down one element in the indexed matrix.	212
	Moves right one element in the indexed matrix.	212
	<i>Percent.</i> Returns $(x \times y) \div 100$. (Leaves the y-value in the Y-register.) Keys:	79
$\%CH$	<i>Percent change.</i> Returns $(x - y)(100 \div y)$.	79

Subject Index

Page numbers in **bold** type indicate primary references. To look up functions by name, use the "Operation Index" (pages 310 through 335). Special (nonalphabetic) characters and symbols are listed at the end of this index.

A

A...F digits, 245, 246, 247
Absolute value, 86, 310
Accessing program labels, 116-117, 148-149
Accuracy of integration (ACC), 197, 200, 201, 202-203, 204
Addition. *See* Arithmetic
Adjusting display contrast, 20
Advertising (example), 241
AGRAPH function, 136-137, 311
control flags, 137, 276
Alpha characters, 37-39, 292-296
as parameters, 73
in programs, 130
table of, 288-291
typing, 37
Alpha data, 65-66, 132-135, 151
Alpha Data Is Invalid, 283
ALPHA menu, 22, 38, 292-296
Alpha mode, 38-39, 65
Alpha program labels, 116
Alpha register, 38-40, 272
capacity of, 39, 130
clearing, 26, 39

displaying, 40, 129, 132
editing (appending), 39, 130
printing, 40, 102, 132
replacing contents of, 39, 130
storing and recalling, 65-66
Alpha strings, 37, 60, 65-66
entering, 37, 130
in matrices, 60
in programs, 130-131
in the real-variable catalog, 62
in storage registers, 60
manipulating, 65-66, 132-135
special characters in, 134, 138-139, 288, 289, 291
Altering parts of numbers, 86
AND, logical, 250, 311
Angles,
converting, 83
expressed in degrees-minutes-seconds, 83
Angular mode (Degrees, Radians, or Grads), 80, 91
Annunciators, 19-20
Append character (±), 130, 291
Application menus, 21, 22
BASE, 245, 297
MATRIX, 206, 212, 224, 303

SOLVER, 178, 307
STAT, 231, 308
ff(x), 196, 309
See also Function menus
Arc. *See* Trigonometry, inverse functions; or Hyperbolic functions
Area of a circle, 108
"AREA" program, 109
Arithmetic,
complex-number, 93-94
integer, 249
matrix, 218-219
simple, 28-33
See also Automatic memory stack
Arrays. *See* Matrices
Arrow keys,
◀, 25
▲ and ▼, 23, 114
◀, ▶, ↑, ↓, and
→, 206, 209, 211, 212, 213
Audio enable, 275, 281, 326
Automatic execution, 274, 280
Automatic exiting, 22
Automatic memory stack, 31, 42-54
and the display, 43-44
drop, 45
lift, 45, 46
registers, 43
reviewing, 44
AVIEW function, 40, 129, 132, 312

B

Backspace, 25
Bad Guess(es), 188, 283
Base
application, 245-251
arithmetic, 249
conversions, 245-246
BASE menu, 245, 297
Base mode flags, 278, 282
Batt Too Low To Print, 104, 283
Batteries, 19, 104, 257-260

Beeper, disabling, 275
Bessel function, 198, 201, 204
Best curve-fitting model, 240
Binary mode, 138, 245, 246, 247, 278
BIT? function, 151, 250
Body of a program, 117
Boolean logic functions, 250
Bounds (limits) of integration, 196, 197, 200-201, 203, 204
"BOXSLV" program segment, 189
Branching, 141-145
conditional tests, 149-151
do-if-true rule, 149
GTO function, 141-143, 145, 149, 152
XEQ function, 141, 143-145, 147, 149
See also Looping
"BSSL" program, 198, 199
Busy annunciator ((●)), 20

C

c, the speed of light, 51, 52
Calling a subroutine, 143-145
Cancelling
digit entry, 28
a function, 76
a menu. *See* **EXIT**
Capacity of the Alpha register, 39-40
CATALOG menu, 40, 298
complex numbers in, 62, 98
functions in, 67-68
matrices in, 62
programs in, 112, 149
real numbers in, 62
variables in, 62
Chain calculations, 31, 52-54
Changing the batteries, 258-260
Changing menus, 21, 23
Changing the sign of a number, 27, 78
Character set, 288-291
printer, 105
Characters. *See* Alpha characters

CHS function (HP-41), 171
CLEAR menu, 26, 299
Clearing
all programs and data, 26, 267–268
the Alpha register, 26
Continuous Memory, 268
the display, 25, 136
a flag, 41
key assignments, 70
a message, 25, 27, 283, 313
a program, 26, 119, 120
program lines, 26, 120
the programmable MENU, 26, 146
the stack, 26, 43
statistical data, 26, 288
storage registers, 26, 64
a variable, 26, 62
with \blacksquare , 25
the X-register, 25, 26, 48
Columns in a matrix, number of, 206, 208, 217
Combinations, 87
Commas
in Alpha strings, 289, 296
in numbers, 34, 36, 254, 275–276
Commands. *See* Functions
Common exponential, 78, 317
Common logarithm, 78, 322
Comparisons, 151
Complex matrices, 214–216
creating, 214
converting to real matrices, 98–99, 215
Complex numbers, 90–99
changing (angular modes), 80, 93
defined, 90–91
displaying, 92–93
in a matrix, 60, 215–216
in storage registers, 60, 98–99
Complex results, 94, 169–170, 278
disabling, 170
Conditional functions, 149–151, 152
Consecutive numeric constants in a program, 118, 256

Constants
for integration, 197, 200, 203
in programs, 117–118, 256
in the stack, 47
Constant?, 188, 283
Continuous Memory, 18, 258, 268
Continuous power on, 323
Contrast of display, 20
CONVERT menu, 82, 86, 300
Converting
angular values, 83
coordinates, 84–85
hours-minutes-seconds values, 83
matrices to and from complex, 99, 215
Coordinate conversions, 84–85
Coordinate mode (Rectangular or Polar), 80, 91
Correcting mistakes, 25, 48, 49–50
in programs, 114
with statistical data, 232–233
Corvallis, Oregon. *See* Rainfall
Creating a matrix,
complex, 214
named, 208
in the X-register, 206
Cross product, 97, 98, 220
Cube root, 78, 255
Cummulative growth, 47
Current
program, 111
program line, 111
modes, 22
See also Mode(s)
Cursor, 19, 28, 39
Curve fitting, 239–244
models, 239–240, 277, 279, 282
transformation equations, 244
CUSTOM menu, 22, 68–70, 112–113, 275,
for executing local labels, 167–168, 278

D
Data points. *See* Statistical data
Data types, 43, 56, 60
Alpha strings, 37, 65–66
complex numbers, 90, 169
matrices, 205
matrices, complex, 214
real numbers, 43, 60
Debugging a program, 102, 114
DEC function (HP-41), 171, 334
Decimal hours or degrees, 83–84
Decimal mode, 245, 247, 248, 278
Decimal places, number of, 34–35
See also Display format
Decimal point
as radix mark, 36, 275–276
as digit separators, 36, 275–276
as a period, 37
Declaring menu variables, 125, 180, 198
Default settings, 280–282
Defining programmable menu keys, 145–146
Degrees angular mode, 80, 93, 277
Degrees-minutes-seconds. *See* Hours-minutes-seconds
Deleting
characters, 25, 134, 135
ENDs, 118
program lines, 112, 120
rows in a matrix, 214, 225
Determinant of a matrix, 216, 219
Diagnostic test, 261–262
Difference. *See* Arithmetic
Digit entry, 28
Digit separators, 36, 276, 281
Dimension Error, 283
Dimensioning a matrix, 64, 208, 217
DISP menu, 34, 302
Display
contrast, 20
annunciators, 19, 23, 80, 100
format, 34–36
and stack registers, 43–44
Displaying
matrix elements, 206, 209, 211
numbers. *See* Display format
menus, 21–22
Distance, 190
Divide by 0, 284
Division. *See* Arithmetic
Do-if-true rule, 149, 151
Dot column for graphics, 136, 137
Dot product, 94, 96, 220
Dots in display (...). *See* Ellipsis
Double-wide printing, 103, 274, 280
“DPLOT” program, 135, 154–158, 185
Drop, stack, 42, 45, 47
DSE function, 153, 316
Duplicating
the T-register, 47
the X-register, 46, 55
D-R function (HP-41), 171

E

e (exponent of ten), 27–28
e, 78, 317
Earth, 51
Edge wrap, 280, 282
Editing
a matrix, 206, 208–209, 211–214
a program, 109–110, 111–112, 120
the storage registers, 235–237
Ellipsis (...), 40, 170, 289
.END., 118
END function, 118, 317
End wrap, 280, 282
Engineering display mode, 34, 36, 92
ENTER,
for separating numbers, 30, 46–47, 118
other uses, 47, 73, 170
Enhancing HP-41 programs, 175

Entering

Alpha characters, 37–39
digits, 28, 46, 117–118
nondecimal numbers, 247
a parameter, 71–75
statistical data, 228–230

Environmental limits, 260

Equation of motion for free-fall, 190–191

Equations,
integrating, 196
root(s) of, 178, 183–186
simplifying, 179

Error of integration. *See* Uncertainty of computation

Error messages, 283–287
clearing, 25, 27, 283
ignoring, 27

Error stops, 115

Errors. *See* Mistakes, correcting

Evaluating expressions
for integration, 197–199

from the keyboard, 28–33, 52–54

in a program, 108–110

for the Solver, 179–182

Executing functions, 67–76

CUSTOM menu, 68–70

function catalog, 67–68

function menus, 21–22

preview, 76

[**XEQ**], 70

Executing programs, 112–114

CUSTOM menu, 112–113

program catalog, 112

[**R/S**], 113

[**XEQ**], 112

[**EXIT**], 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 25

automatic exiting, 22

Exponential (e^x), 78, 317

Exponents, calculating ($\boxed{\text{EXP}}$, $\boxed{\text{10}^x}$, $\boxed{\text{e}^x}$), 28, 78

Exponents of ten (**E**), 27–28, 316

Extremum, 284

Extremums, 188

F

FACT function (HP-41), 171
Factorial, 21, 87
Features, HP-42S, 4
Filling a matrix, 206, 208–209,
211–214
with complex numbers, 215
Fixed-decimal display mode, 34, 35

Flags, 41, **273–282**
setting and clearing, 41
table of, 280–282
testing, 41, 150
that affect printing, 103
that affect program execution,
131–132
user, 273, 280, 282

FLAGS menu, 41, 302

Forecasting, 239–243

curve models, 239–240

Format. *See* Display format

Fractional part, 86
in a nondecimal number, 247

FRC function (HP-41), 171

“FREE” program, 190

Frobenius norm, **219**, 220

Full precision, showing, 36

Function menus, 21–22

CATALOG, **40**, 67, 112, 298

CLEAR, 23, **26**, 299

CONVERT, **82–86**, 300

CUSTOM, **68–70**, 112–113, 301

DISP, **34**, 302

FLAGS, **41**, 150, 302

MODES, 22, 64, **80** 167, 304

PGM.FCN, 24, 305

PRINT, **101–102**, 306

PROB, 21, **87**, 307

TOP.FCN, **23**, 308

See also Application menus

Function names, 68, 71, **310**,
310–335

HP-41, 171–172

previewing, 76

Functions,

assigning to CUSTOM, 68–69
executing, 67–76
one-number, 28, **29–30**, 49, 77
two-number, 28, **30**, 49, 77

Future value. *See* Forecasting

G

g, acceleration due to gravity, 190

General mathematics, 77–78

See also Arithmetic

GETKEY function, 319

Global labels, 104, **116**, 126, 119,
125, 142, 146

assigning to CUSTOM, 68–69,
112–113

for declaring variable menus, **125**,
179, 180, 197, 198

search order, 149

Global Span, 284

Go to

label. *See* GTO function

matrix element, **212**, 224

Grads angular mode (**GRAD**), 20, **80**,
277, 281

Graphics, 135–140

See also “PLOT” program

Grow mode, 212, **213**, 225, 277, 282

GTO function, **141–143**, 145, 149,
152, 319

[**GTO**] \square , 111, 126, 128, 319

[**GTO**] \square , 109, 111, **118**, 123, 139,
319

H

Halting a program, 112, **114**, 122,
126, 129, 132, 145

Hewlett-Packard quality, 3

Hexadecimal mode, **245**, 246–248,
251, 278

See also Base conversions

HMS function (HP-41), 171

HP-41, 166–175

Alpha register, 169

compatibility, 166

data errors, 169

display, 170

function names, 171–172

printer interface, 169

programs, enhancing, 175

programs, entering, 172–174

range of numbers, 169

statistical operations, 168

User keyboard, 167

HP-42S Programming Examples and Techniques manual, 154, 175, 187, 239

Hours-minutes-seconds, 83–84

HR function (HP-41), 171

Hyperbolic functions, 89

I

i (row pointer), 211, 223

i (the imaginary unit), 60, **90–91**, 93

Index pointers, 211, 223

controlling, 223–224

Indexing a matrix, 223

Indirect addressing, 71–73, **74**, 256

INPUT function, **121–124**, 175, 279,
281, 320

Inserting

program lines, 111

rows in a matrix, 214

Installing batteries, 258–260

Insufficient Memory, 256, 268,
284

INT function (HP-41), 171

Integer part, 86

Integrating, 284

Integrating flag, 279, 281

Integration, numeric, 196–204

accuracy (ACC), 197, 201, **202–203**,
204

algorithm, 197–198

calculation time, 198, 201, **203**

interrupting, 201

iterations, 197

lower limit (*LLIM*), 196, 201
in programs, 203–204
sampling, 197
uncertainty of, 203
upper limit (*ULIM*), 196, 201
using, 197–202
writing programs for, 197–199
Integ(**I**nteg), 284
Interest rate, 192, 193, 194, 195
Intermediate results, 31, 32, 42, 52
Interrupted, 284
Invalid **D**ata, 284
Invalid **F**orecast **M**odel, 284
Invalid **T**ype, 284
Inverse hyperbolic functions. *See* Hyperbolic functions
Inverse trigonometric functions. *See* Trigonometry, inverse (arc) functions
Inverting a matrix, 219
ISG function, 153, 320

J

J (column pointer), 211, 223
Jumping. *See* Branching

K

Key assignment mode, 167, 278, 301
Keyboard diagram, Inside front cover
Alpha mode, 39
Keying in
a binary number, 138, 247
a complex number, 91
an exponent of ten, 27–28
a hexadecimal number, 247
a matrix, 206–210
an octal number, 247
a parameter, 71–75
a program, 108–110, 111–112
a real number, 27–28
statistical data, 228–229, 232–233, 238
an Alpha string, 37

Keystroke programming, 108
See also Programming

L

Łukasiewicz, 42
Label **N**ot **F**ound, 284
Labels. *See* Menu labels or Program labels
Largest numbers for base conversion, 248
Last *x*,
for correcting mistakes, 48, 49–50
defined, 48
retrieving (LASTx), 48
for reusing numbers, 48, 50–52
LAST X register, 48, 58–60, 73
during recall arithmetic, 61–62
LBL function, 109, 111, 115, 116–117, 321
See also Program labels
Least significant bit, 250
Left-to-right, working problems, 52–53
Levels of a menu. *See* Submenus
Lift, stack, 42, 45–46
disabled, 46, 48, 49, 276, 281
Limitations on statistical data, 237
Limits of integration, 196, 197, 200–202, 203, 204
Linear regression (LINF), 239, 240
See also Curve fitting
Line feed character (LF), 129, 160, 288
Lines, drawing, 136
Listing. *See* Printing
Local-label mode, 167–168, 278, 282, 301
Local labels, 116–117, 141, 142, 146
advantages, 149, 270
executing with CUSTOM, 167–168
search order, 148–149
short form, 116, 149
Local maximum or minimum, 188, 284
Logarithmic curve, 239, 244

Logarithmic functions, 78
Long form local labels. *See* Short form local labels
Looping, 152–154
See also Branching
Lost return locations, 145, 286
Low battery power, 20, 104, 257–258, 279, 281
Low memory. *See* Insufficient Memory
Lower limit of integration (*LLIM*), 196, 200, 201, 204
Lowercase letters,
printing, 103, 274, 280
typing, 37, 290–291

M

Machine **R**eset, 257, 262, 267, 285
Mantissa. *See* Showing full precision
Manual printing mode, 102, 104, 274
MATA, MATB, and MATX, 221, 227
Mathematics. *See* Arithmetic
Matrices, 205–227
complex, 214–216
creating, 206–210, 214
filling, 206, 208–209, 211–214, 215
special, 63, 221, 227
storage registers (REGS), 63, 227
Matrix
arithmetic, 218–219
Editor, 211–214
functions, 219–220
Grow mode, 213, 225, 238, 242, 277, 282
scalar arithmetic, 218
containing statistical data, 237–239
variables, 40, 62, 227
vector functions, 94, 220
Wrap mode, 213
MATRIX menu, 206, 212, 224, 303
Maximum, 188, 284
Mean, 231
Memory
available, 4, 40, 269–270, 271–272

clearing, 25–26, 267–268
management, 267–272
organization, 271–272
requirements, 115, 272
reset, 267
Memory **C**lear, 257, 260, 268, 285
Menu
keys, 20–21
keys, defining, 145–146
labels, 20–21
levels. *See* Submenus
maps, 23–24, 292–309
rows, 23
variables, 125–126, 180, 198
Menus, 20–25, 292–309
application, 21, 22.
See also Application menus
exiting, 21, 22, 23, 25
function, 21, 22.
See also Function menus
introduction to, 20–21
selecting, 21, 22
Message flags, 279, 281
Messages, 283–287
clearing, 25, 27, 283, 313
displaying, 129
error, 27, 283–287
printing, 129, 132
Minimum, 188, 284
Minutes-seconds format. *See* Hours-minutes-seconds
Mistakes, correcting,
by backspacing, 25, 28
using the LAST X register, 49–50
Mode(s),
All display, 34, 36, 277
AllΣ (statistics), 168, 231, 233–234, 240, 277, 282
Alpha, 48, 65, 66, 132, 133, 279, 281
angular, 80, 91, 277
Degrees, 22, 80, 91, 95, 97, 277
display, 34–36, 276–277
Engineering display, 34, 36, 92, 277
Fixed-decimal display, 34, 35, 277

Grads, 80, 91, 277, 281
Manual printing, 102, 104, 274
Normal printing, 102, 274
Number display, 34–36, 277
Polar, 80, 91, 92, 93, 95, 97
Radians, 20, 80, 81
Rectangular, 22, 80, 91, 93
Scientific display, 34, 35
Trace printing, 102, 114, 274
See also Flags
MODES menu, 22, 64, 80, 167
Modifying HP-41 programs, 175
Modulo (remainder), 86, 87
Moments, computing, 97–98
Most significant bit, 250
Moving data in the stack, 44–45
Moving the program pointer, 111, 114, 145
Multiple roots, finding, 183, 184–186
Multiplication. *See* Arithmetic
Multirow menus, 23

N

Names,
register, 38, 43, 48, 57, 63
variable, 56
Natural exponential, 78
Natural logarithm, 78
Negative numbers, 27, 78
nondecimal, 248
Nested menus. *See* Submenus
Nested subroutines, 144
New program space, 109, 111, 118, 319
Next
menu row (▼), 23
program line (■ SST), 111, 112, 114
No, 149, 151, 285
No Complex Variables, 285
No Matrix Variables, 285
No Menu Variables, 285
No Real Variables, 285
No Variables, 285
Nonexistent, 285

Normal
execution, 112
printing mode, 102, 274
Normalized complex numbers, 92
Norms. *See* Frobenius norm or Row norm
NOT, logical, 250, 323
NULL, 76
Null program, 118
Number
of decimal places displayed, 34–36
entry, 27–28
of payments, 192
Numbers,
complex, 60, 90–99, 214–215
correcting. *See* Correcting mistakes
displaying, 34–36
keying in, 27–28
in a matrix. *See* Filling a matrix
in program lines, 117–118
internal representation of, 34
negative, 27, 248
nondecimal, 247, 248
random, 87, 88
range of, 33, 248
real, 43, 60
separating, 30, 46, 118, 170
with exponents of ten, 27–28
36-bit, 247, 248–249
Numerical integration. *See* Integration, numeric

O

Objects. *See* Data types
OCT function (HP-41), 171, 335
Octal mode, 245, 246, 247, 248, 251, 278
OFF function, 323
Old value of a matrix element, 213
ON function, 323
One-number functions, 29–30, 49, 77
with a matrix, 218
One-variable statistics, 229
Operands. *See* Numbers
Operations, index of, 310–335

OR, logical, 250, 323
Order of
calculation, 31, 52–53
entry, 30
Out of Range, 33, 249, 286
See also Statistical data, limitations
Output, 121, 128–132
See also Printing
Overflow,
decimal numbers, 33, 237, 275, 286
nondecimal numbers, 248–249, 287

P

Paired-sample statistics. *See* Two-variable statistics
Parameters, 71–75
Alpha, 73, 74
numeric, 72
stack registers (ST), 58–59, 73
tables of, 71–72
Parentheses, 294
Parts of numbers, 86–87
Pause (PSE), 131, 170, 325
Payment, 192, 194
Percent, 79
Percent change, 79–80
Periods
in Alpha strings, 37
in numbers, 36, 275–276
Permanent .END., 118, 272
Permutations, 87
PGMINT function, 203, 204, 323
PGMSLV function, 189, 324
PGM.FCN menu, 23, 24, 305
Phasor form. *See* Polar mode
Pi (π), 80, 81, 108, 117, 324
PIXEL function, 135, 136, 158, 162, 324
“PLOT” program, 135, 158–165
See also “DPLOT” program and Graphics
Polar coordinates, 80, 90–91, 93
converting, 84–85, 93
Polar mode, 80, 92, 93, 95, 97
Power
consumption, 257–258
curve, 240, 244
on and off, 18, 323
Powers. *See* Exponents
Precision,
full, 34, 36
internal, 3, 34, 247
integration. *See* Accuracy of integration
of statistical data, 237
trigonometric, 255
Predicted value. *See* Forecasting
Present value, 192
Previous
contents of X-register. *See* Last x
menu level (EXIT), 21–22, 23, 25
menu row (▲), 23
program line (■ BST), 111, 114
Print annunciator, 20, 100, 256
Print functions, 101–102
in programs, 131
PRINT menu, 101, 102, 306
Printer, HP 82240A, 100, 103
character set, 105
Printer port, 101
Printing, 100–105
calculations (keystrokes), 102
speed (delay time), 103
double-wide, 103, 274
the LCD (*liquid crystal display*), 101, 158, 161, 162
lowercase letters, 103, 274
modes, 102, 274
names of variables and programs, 63, 101
off, 101, 324
on, 101, 325
a program, 104–105
a record of keystrokes and results, 102
storage registers, 64
the stack, 101
a variable, 63, 64, 101–102, 160
See also Flags that affect printing
Printing Is Disabled, 131, 286

PROB (*probability*) menu, 87, 307
combinations, 87
factorials, 87
gamma function, 88
permutations, 87
random number, 88
random number seed, 88
PROFF function, 101, 324
Program
catalog, 40, 69, 112, 149
clearing (deleting), 26, 119
-entry mode, 25, 109, 110, 111–112, 113, 114, 115, 120, 181, 279, 281
memory, 115, 272
names. *See* Program labels
output, 121, 128–132
pointer, 111–112
returns, 143–145, 286
Program labels, 116–117
branching to, 141–145, 145–148, 148–149
catalog, 112, 149
global, 116, 149
indirect branching, 142–143
local, 116–117, 148–149, 270
search order, 148–149, 270
unique, 116, 117
Program line numbers, 109
moving to, 111
Programmable menu, 145–148
Programming, 108–175
simple, 108–120
for the Solver, 179–182
for integration, 197–199
techniques, 141–165
Programming Examples and Techniques
manual, 154, 175, 187, 239
Programs,
clearing, 26, 119, 120
editing. *See* Program-entry mode
executing. *See* Executing programs
printing, 104–105
testing, 102, 114–115
Prompting for input, 121–128, 129
PRON function, 101, 104, 279, 286, 325

Purging. *See* Clearing
P-R function (HP-41), 171

Q

“QUAD” program, 173–174, 175
Quadratic formula, 172
Quality, 3
Questions, common, 254–256
QUIET function, 256, 275, 326
Quotation marks
for global labels, 116
typing, 296
Quotient. *See* Arithmetic

R

Radians
angular mode (**RAD**), 80, 81, 93, 277, 281
to degrees (conversion), 82, 83
Radix, 34, 36, 276, 281
Rainfall, 229, 230, 232
Raising a number to a power, 78
Random number, 87, 88
seed, 88
Range error, 33, 275, 286
ignored, 237, 275, 281
Range of numbers, 33, 275
for base conversions, 248
RDN function (HP-41), 171
Real numbers, 43, 60
comparing, 151
Real results only, 94, 170, 278, 282
Rearranging the stack, 44–45
Recall arithmetic, 61
and LAST X, 61–62
Recalling data, 55–59, 61
into the Alpha register, 66, 133
Reciprocal, 78
Rectangular
coordinates, 84–85, 90–91
mode, 22, 80, 91
Redimensioning a matrix, 217
Reference material, 254–335

Registers. *See* Stack registers or Storage registers
Regression. *See* Curve fitting
Remainder (modulo), 87
Reordering the stack, 44–45
Repair. *See* Service
Replacing the batteries, 258–260
Reserved
flags, 273, 280–282
variable names, 227
Resetting the calculator, 262, 267
Restoring the old value of a matrix element, 213
Restricted Operation, 286
Results,
displaying, 128–129
intermediate, 31–32, 42
Retrieving data. *See* Recalling data
Return locations, 144
loss of, 145
Reverse Polish Notation. *See* RPN
Rigel Centaurus, 51
Rolling the stack, 44, 328
Root(s)
approximation, 188
of an equation, 172, 183
finder, 178
See also Solver
Roots, multiple, 183–186
Rotating
the Alpha register, 135
a 36-bit number, 250, 251
Rounding numbers, 3, 34, 86
Row norm, 219
Row sum, 220
Rows in a matrix,
inserting and deleting, 214, 225
number of, 206, 208, 217
See also Grow mode
Rows in a menu, 23
RPN (Reverse Polish Notation), 4, 42, 53
advantages, 32
RTN function, 112, 143–145, 328
See also Subroutines

Run/Stop key (**R/S**), 113–114, 122, 126, 131, 145, 147, 152, 155, 156, 158, 159, 162–163, 170, 187, 201, 328
Running programs. *See* Executing programs
Running record, printing, 102, 114
R-D function (HP-41), 171
R-P function (HP-41), 171

S

“SAREA” program, 122, 126, 128
Scalar arithmetic, 218
Scientific display mode, 34, 35
Selecting
a menu, 21–22
a mode. *See* Mode(s)
a nondecimal base, 245, 251
Self-test, calculator, 261–262
Service, 260–265
agreements, 265
centers, 263–264, Inside back cover
charge, 264
obtaining, 263–264
outside the United States, 264
Shift (**■**), 18, 19, 20, 125, 168, 170
Shipping, 264–265
Short form local labels, 116, 149
SHOW, 36
Alpha register, 40
matrix, 207
nondecimal number, 246
program line, 246
Showing full precision (**SHOW**), 36
nondecimal numbers, 246
Sign bit, 248
Sign of a number, 27, 248
Sign Reversal, 188, 286
Significant digits, 36
Simultaneous linear equations, 205, 220–223
calculating the unknowns, 221, 222
coefficient matrix (**MATA**), 220, 221–222, 227

constant matrix (*MATB*), 220, 221–222, 227
solution matrix (*MATX*), 220, 221–222, 227
variables created for, 227
Single-variable statistics, 229
Sirius, 51–52
SIZE function, 57, 64, 329
Size Error, 286
Small numbers. *See* Exponents of ten
“SMILE” program, 130, 139
Solve/Integ RTN Lost, 286
Solve(Solve), 287
Solver, 178–195
 entering guesses (estimates), 178, 183–186, 189
 $f(x) = 0$, 179
 halting, 187
 how it works, 179, 186–188
 interrupting, 187
 math error, 187
 maximum, 188, 284
 minimum, 188, 284
 programs (functions), 178, 179–182
 using in a program, 189
 restarting, 187
 results, interpreting, 187–188
 using, 178–183
 variable menu, 125–126, 180
 writing a program for, 179–182
 See also “DPLT” program
SOLVER menu, 307
Solving
 flag, 278, 281
 for an unknown variable, 178
 a systems of linear equations, 221
Speed of light, *c*, 51, 52
Square, 78
Square root, 78
Square root of the sum of the squares. *See* Frobenius norm
Stack,
 arithmetic in, 28–33, 43, 45–48
 clearing, 26, 43
 copying data (*ENTER*), 46–47
 data types, 43, 60, 90, 205

drop, 42, 45, 46
lift, 42, 45–46, 276, 281
memory, 43, 45, 270–271
printing, 101
registers, 43, 44, 48
 registers as parameters (*ST*), 58–59, 73, 172
Standard deviation, 231, 232
Stat Math Error, 287
STAT menu, 231, 240, 308
Statistical data,
 clearing, 26, 228
 correcting (Σ^-), 232–233
 entering (Σ^+), 228–230, 231, 237–238, 240, 275
 limitations, 237, 275
 in a matrix, 237–239, 242
 in storage registers, 228, 233–237, 238–239, 243
 one-variable, 229
 two-variable, 228
 See also Summation coefficients
Statistics, 228–244
 correlation coefficient, 240, 243
 HP-41, 168, 233
 mean, 230, 231
 predicted value. *See* Forecasting
 registers. *See* Summation
 coefficients
 standard deviation, 231, 232
 weighted mean, 231
Stepwise execution, 114
Stopping
 integration, 201
 a program, 114
 the Solver, 187
Storage arithmetic, 61–62, 218
Storage registers, 55, 57–58, 63–64
 clearing, 26, 64
 displaying, 128
 editing, 235–237
 making complex, 60, 98–99
 making real, 99
 managing, 63–64
 number of, 57, 64
 printing, 64, 102

recalling data from, 58
storing data into, 57
viewing, 128, 235–237
Storing, 55–59, 60
 complex numbers, 98–99
 elements in a matrix, 206, 208–209, 212–213
matrices, 60, 208
 statistical data, 228–230
Strings. *See* Alpha strings
ST+, ST-, ST*, and ST/ functions (HP-41), 172
Submatrices, 226–227
 getting, 226
 putting, 226–227
Submenus, 23–25
Subroutines, 143–145
 nested, 144
 return locations, 144–145, 286
Subtraction. *See* Arithmetic
Sum. *See* Arithmetic
Summation coefficients, 228, 233–237, 238
AllΣ mode, 233–234, 277, 282
HP-41, 168
Linear mode, 233–234
location of, 234
number of, 168, 233–234
Support, customer, 254, Inside back cover
Swapping
 rows in a matrix, 225
 data in the X- and Y-registers ($\{\text{xy}\}$), 30, 33, 44–45, 52–53
 data in the X-register with another register or variable, 331
System of linear equations. *See* Simultaneous linear equations
T
t, time, 190
T-register, 43, 45, 47, 58–59, 73, 187
 automatic duplicating of, 47
Tangent, 80
Testing
 bits in a number, 151, 250
 data type, 151
 flags, 41, 150, 273
 a program, 102, 114–115
Temperature,
 operating, 260
storage, 260
Time value of money, 192–195
<Too Big>, 249, 287
TOP.FCN menu, 22, 23, 308
Trace printing, 102, 114, 256
Translating HP-41 programs. *See* HP-41 programs, enhancing
Transposing a matrix, 219
Trigonometry, 80–82
 angular modes, 80
 coordinate modes, 80
 functions, 80–82
 inverse (arc) functions, 81–82
Troubleshooting, 260–262
True/false test. *See* Do-if-true rule.
Turning the calculator on and off, 18, 323
“TVM” program, 192–195
Two’s complement, 246, 248
Two-number functions, 28, 30, 77
 with matrices, 218
Two-variable statistics, 228
Types of data. *See* Data types
U
Uncertainty of computation (integration), 202, 203
Underflow, 33
Undoing. *See* Correcting mistakes
Uniformly spaced single-variable statistics, 229
Unit vector, 220
 of a complex number, 86, 220
Unquoted program labels, 116
Upper limit of integration (*ULIM*), 196, 200, 201, 204
User memory. *See* Memory
User keyboard (HP-41), 167

V

v_0 , initial velocity, 190
Variable
 of integration, 197, 200
 menu, 125–128, 180, 198
See also Menu variables
Variables, 55, 56–57, 62–63
 in catalogs, 40, 62
 clearing, 26, 62
 creating, 56
 displaying, 128–129
 inputting, 121–124, 125–128
 managing, 62–63
 names of, 56
 as parameters, 71–72
 recalling data from, 56–57
 storing data into, 55–56, 121–128
 printing, 63, 101
 viewing, 128–129, 132
Vector
 arithmetic, 93–98, 218–219
 cross product, 97–98, 220
 dot product, 94, 96, 220
 functions, 94, 220
VIEW function, 104, 128, 132, 274, 331
Viewing
 the Alpha register, 40, 129–131
 full precision, 36
 program lines, 111
 the amount of available memory, 40, 269–270
 a variable or register, 128–129
"VOL" program, 180–183, 189

W

Warranty, 262–263
 on service, 265
 in the United Kingdom, 263
Weighted mean, 231
Where data can be stored, 56, 60
Word size, 248–249
Wrap mode, 212, 213

Wrap,

edge, 280, 282
 end, 280, 282
Wrong function, correcting, 49–50
Wrong number(s), correcting, 49–50

X

X-register, 43–51, 55, 58–59, 73
 clearing, 25–26, 48
 comparing with the Y-register, 151, 332
 comparing with zero, 151, 332
 exchanging with another register or variable, 331
 exchanging with Y-register, 30, 33, 44–45, 52–54
 and integration, 202, 203
 and INPUT, 121–122
 in the Matrix Editor, 211–213
 for statistical data, 228–229
 testing, 151, 332
x-value,
 entering for statistics, 228–229, 233, 238
 forecasting, 240, 243
XEQ function, 70, 112
 subroutine call, 143–145
XOR, logical, 250, 333
X<=0? function (HP-41), 172
X<=Y? function (HP-41), 172

Y

y-intercept, 240, 244
Y-register, 43, 45, 58, 59, 73
 exchanging with X-register, 30, 33, 44–45, 52–54
 for statistical data, 228–229
y-value,
 entering for statistics, 228–229, 233, 238
 forecasting, 240, 243
"YEAR" program, 147
Yes, 149, 151, 287
 y^x , 78

Z

Z-register, 43, 45, 58, 59, 73
Zero, 25, 33, 121, 180
Zero of an expression (root), 186–188

Special Characters

$\overline{\square}$, 19, 20
 $\overline{\square}$, 19–20, 104, 257
 (\bullet) , 20
 ∇ , 20, 23, 73
 \vdash (append symbol), 130, 291
 \blacksquare (bullet character) in a menu label, 22
 \blacktriangleright (program pointer), 111, 113
 ... in the display, 40, 170, 289
 Γ (gamma) function, 88
ff(x) menu, 309
 $*$ function (HP-41), 172
 $/$ function (HP-41), 172
 $+/-$ function, 27, 171
 \leftarrow , \uparrow , \downarrow , and \rightarrow functions, 206, 209, 212, 225, 335
 $\%$ (percent), 37, 79
2's complement, 246, 248

Contacting Hewlett-Packard

For Information about Using the Calculator. If you have questions about how to use the calculator that are not covered in this guide, first check the table of contents, the subject index, and "Answers to Common Questions" in appendix A. If you can't find an answer, you can contact the Calculator Support Department:

Hewlett-Packard
Calculator Support
1000 N.E. Circle Blvd.
Corvallis, OR 97330, U.S.A.
(503) 715-2004 (Mon.-Fri., 8:00am-3:00pm Pacific time)
(503) 715-3628 FAX

For Hardware Service. See appendix A for diagnostic instructions and information on obtaining service. *But, before you send your unit for service, please call HP Calculator Support at the number listed below.*

Hewlett-Packard
Corvallis Service Center
1030 N.E. Circle Blvd.
Corvallis, OR 97330, U.S.A.
(503) 715-2004 (HP Calculator Support)

If you are outside the United States, see appendix A for information on locating the nearest service center.

HP Calculator Bulletin Board System. The Bulletin Board provides for the exchange of software and information among HP calculator users, developers, and distributors. It operates at 300/1200/2400/9600/14400 baud, full duplex, no parity, 8 bits, 1 stop bit. The telephone number is (503) 715-4448. The Bulletin Board is a free service—you pay for only the long-distance telephone charge.

The Bulletin Board also supports telnet and anonymous ftp sessions at this internet address: hpcvbbs.external.hp.com.

Contents

Part 1: Basic Operation

- 18 **1: Getting Started**
- 42 **2: The Automatic Memory Stack**
- 55 **3: Variables and Storage Registers**
- 67 **4: Executing Functions**
- 77 **5: Numeric Functions**
- 90 **6: Complex Numbers**
- 100 **7: Printing**

Part 2: Programming

- 108 **8: Simple Programming**
- 121 **9: Program Input and Output**
- 141 **10: Programming Techniques**
- 166 **11: Using HP-41 Programs**

Part 3: Built-In Applications

- 178 **12: The Solver**
- 196 **13: Numerical Integration**
- 205 **14: Matrix Operations**
- 228 **15: Statistics**
- 245 **16: Base Operations**

Part 4: Appendixes and Reference

- 254 **A: Assistance, Batteries, and Service**
- 267 **B: Managing Calculator Memory**
- 273 **C: Flags**
- 283 **D: Messages**
- 288 **E: Character Table**
- 292 **Menu Maps**
- 310 **Operation Index**
- 336 **Subject Index**



**HEWLETT
PACKARD**

Part Number 00042-90001 Edition 7

English
Printed in U.S.A.

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 9 10 11 12
* 95 96 97 98 99 *



Scan Copyright ©
The Museum of HP Calculators
www.hpmuseum.org

Original content used with permission.

Thank you for supporting the Museum of HP
Calculators by purchasing this Scan!

Please do not make copies of this scan or
make it available on file sharing services.